Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology
for Medical Students

Approved by the Ministry of Education of the Republic of Belarus
as course of Latin for foreign students for education institutions
providing higher medical education

Допущено Министерством образования Республики Беларусь в качестве
учебного пособия для иностранных студентов учреждений,
obеспечивающих получение высшего медицинского образования

Гродно 2005
УДК 811.124:61(075.8)
ББК 81.2 Латин я 73
K72

Авторы: доц. Д.К. Кондратьев, О.Е. Вылегжанина, Ю.В. Князева

Под общ. ред. доц. Кондратьева Д.К.

Рецензенты: зав. каф. иностранных языков Гомельского государственного медицинского университета, доц. С.А. Лин;
зав. каф. латинского языка Белорусского государственного медицинского университета, доц. А.З. Цисик.

Кондратьев Д.К.

ISBN 985-496-063-3

Учебное пособие предназначено для иностранных студентов лечебного, педиатрического и медико-психологического факультетов медицинских вузов, изучающих дисциплину «Латинский язык и основы медицинской терминологии» на английском языке.

This manual is meant for foreign students studying the course “Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology” at Medical Faculties, Faculties of Pediatrics and Faculties of Medical Psychology of Medical Institutions of Higher Education (the language of instruction: English).

УДК 811.124:61(075.8)
ББК 81.2 Латин я 73

ISBN 985-496-063-3 © Д.К. Кондратьев, О.Е. Вылегжанина, Ю.В. Князева, 2005
Preface

Textbook “Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology” is designed to be a comprehensive textbook covering the entire curriculum for medical students in this subject. The course “Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology” is a two-semester course that introduces students to the Latin and Greek medical terms that are commonly used in Medicine. The aim of the two-semester course is to achieve an active command of basic grammatical phenomena and rules with a special stress on the system of the language and on the specific character of medical terminology, and that to the extent that enables an active use of Latin and Greek medical terms and promote further own work with them.

The textbook consists of three basic parts:

1. **Anatomical Terminology**: The primary rank is occupied by anatomical nomenclature whose international version remains Latin in the full extent. All of the anatomical nomenclatures produced so far have used Latin as their base. The first official Latin anatomical nomenclature was introduced at a congress of the Anatomische Gesellschaft in Basle in 1895, the last edition, called *Terminologia Anatomica*, was introduced by the International Anatomical Nomenclature Committee and published in 1998. Latin as a dead language does not develop and does not belong to any country or nation. It has a number of advantages that classical languages offer, its constancy, international character and neutrality.

2. **Clinical Terminology**: Learning clinical terminology you should realize that it is in many ways like learning a foreign language. Like a foreign language, medical terms often sound strange and confusing. As a result of being unable to understand the words, they will have very little meaning to you. But it is wrong to assume that only highly educated people can use and understand them. Medical terms sound like a foreign language because the vast majority of them have Greek and Latin origin. So, for example, the word "gastrectomy" is of a Greek origin and means “the
total removal of a stomach”. “Gastrectomy” comes from the Greek word "gaster" which means "stomach" and the Greek word "ectome", which means "cut out". The main reason of using these words is that medical terms provide one word that describes something that would otherwise take many words to say. For example, it is quicker to say "gastrectomy" than to say "the total removal of a stomach ". You will be able to learn medical terms by understanding the origins of these words in Latin and Greek.

3. **Pharmaceutical Terminology**: In pharmaceutical terminology Latin has, for the time being, remained a functioning means of international communication, guaranteed by the European Pharmacopoeia (1996) and by the corpus of International Non-proprietary Names (1992, 1996), even though in the future an ever stronger competition of national languages should be taken into account. But even though national languages have been favored in prescriptions in some countries, in many countries Latin has continued to be preferred and the standard international nomenclature of drugs is based on the Latin version. The Latin version of the pharmacopoeia has been used in Germany, Switzerland, Japan, China, etc.

**The Role of the Latin and Greek Languages**

Greek and Roman cultures are the foundations of western culture - its literature, ideas, art, politics, and conceptions of the individual. Greek myth is still a shared fund of images and narratives that express human experience. Latin is the major source of English vocabulary, and Greek provides scientific language in many fields. Greek and Roman cultures help us to understand the relationship between western culture and other cultural systems and place ourselves better in the world.

The study of Latin and Greek culture provides students with a better understanding of the roots of their own culture, which has been so strongly
influenced by Roman and Greek art, Medicine, law, and religion. The pursuit of Latin and Greek language skills not only provides the broadening experience which comes from learning how to think and express oneself in another language, but can also be great aid to building vocabulary and language skills in English. Latin and Greek literature and mythology introduce you to classical authors whose excellence is beyond question and whose works and genres have influenced Western literature down to our own day.

- Greek is the language of Homer, Socrates, Plato, Aristotle, Diogenes, Plutarch and the Bible.
- Latin is the language of Plautus, Terence, Cicero, Vergil, Horace, Ovid, St. Augustine and St.Francis of Assisi.
- After the Roman conquest of Britain under Emperor Claudius, the native Picts' Celtic language first became infused with Latin, then merged with the new invaders' Germanic (Anglo-Saxon) dialects, and finally became English. Thus, Greek and Latin can be great aids to building vocabulary and language skills in English.

As the Romans conquered the then known world, Latin became the universal language of Italy and the provinces. Many centuries after the fall of Rome, Latin still ruled supreme. To this very day, Latin is the language of the Catholic Church, and during the formative period of the western European languages it was incorporated in every one of them. The Latin language has been around for more than 2500 years, and throughout the years has played a leading role in various fields. Not only was Latin the language of the Romans in antiquity, but at a later stage it also became the language of administrators, the Catholic Church, scholars and artists. Even now the Latin language is present in a prominent way, especially in Medicine.

Science is of international nature. The development of technical languages in the individual branches of science is connected with frequent borrowing of foreign language lexical material which is mostly of Latin or Greek origin. Greek and
Latin represent the traditional language material to be used in medical terminology.

English medical terminology developed from medieval Latin terminology, which had absorbed a developed Greek terminology. Greek medicine migrated to Rome at an early date, and many Latin terms crept into its terminology. Only a few medical terms came from the oldest developmental period of the English language (from Anglo-Saxon). Latin was the language of science up to the beginning of the 18th Century, so all medical texts were written in Latin.
## Contents

### Part I. Anatomical Terminology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Lesson 1. PHONETICS: READING AND PRONUNCIATION</td>
<td>p. 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Lesson 2. ACCENT RULES, WORD STRESSING</td>
<td>p. 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Lesson 3. STRUCTURE OF ANATOMICAL TERMS. NOUN AND ITS GRAMMATICAL CATEGORIES</td>
<td>p. 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Lesson 4. ADJECTIVE. TWO GROUPS OF ADJECTIVES</td>
<td>p. 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Lesson 5. DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES</td>
<td>p. 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Lesson 6. LATIN THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS. MASCULINE GENDER</td>
<td>p. 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Lesson 7. LATIN THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS. FEMININE GENDER</td>
<td>p. 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Lesson 8. LATIN THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS. NEUTER GENDER</td>
<td>p. 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Lesson 9. NOMINATIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES</td>
<td>p. 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Lesson 10. GENITIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES</td>
<td>p. 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Lesson 11. PREFIXES IN THE ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY</td>
<td>p. 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Lesson 12. SAMPLE FINAL TEST</td>
<td>p. 84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Part II. Clinical Terminology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Lesson 1. GREEK &amp; LATIN COMPONENT ELEMENTS</td>
<td>p. 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Lesson 2. GREEK &amp; LATIN COMPONENT ELEMENTS</td>
<td>p. 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Lesson 3. GREEK &amp; LATIN COMPONENT ELEMENTS</td>
<td>p. 98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Lesson 4. GREEK &amp; LATIN COMPONENT ELEMENTS</td>
<td>p. 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Lesson 5. GREEK &amp; LATIN COMPONENT ELEMENTS</td>
<td>p. 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Lesson 6. GREEK &amp; LATIN COMPONENT ELEMENTS</td>
<td>p. 112</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Part III. Pharmaceutical Terminology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Lesson 1. INTRODUCTION TO THE PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY</th>
<th>p. 102</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Lesson 2. STANDARD PRESCRIPTION PHRASES INDICATING ORDERS AND INSTRUCTIONS</td>
<td>p. 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Lesson 3. MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION LIQUIDS AND SEMISOLIDS IN PRESCRIPTIONS</td>
<td>p. 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Lesson 4. PRESCRIPTION REGULATIONS FOR TABLETS, SUPPOSITORIES AND OPHTHALMIC FILMS SOLIDS AND OTHER PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN PRESCRIPTIONS</td>
<td>p. 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Lesson 5. LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS NAMES OF ACIDS, OXIDES, PEROXIDES, HYDROXIDES</td>
<td>p. 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Lesson 6. LATIN NAMES OF SALTS IN PRESCRIPTIONS</td>
<td>p. 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Lesson 7. SAMPLE FINAL TEST</td>
<td>p. 117</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Part IV. Appendix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Syllabus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Latin-English Anatomy Dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>English-Latin Anatomy Dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Greek &amp; Latin-English Clinical Dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Latin-English Pharmaceutical Dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>English-Latin Pharmaceutical Dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Common Abbreviations Used in Prescriptions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Sample Final Examination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In this lesson you will:

- Become familiar with the Roman alphabet.
- Learn to pronounce Latin vowels and consonants.
- Learn to pronounce Latin diphthongs and digraphs.
- Learn to read Latin words and word combinations.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Roman alphabet.
II. Pronunciation of vowels and diphthongs.
III. Pronunciation of consonants and digraphs.
IV. Pronunciation of letter combinations.
V. Exercises.
VI. Vocabulary

We cannot be sure exactly how the ancient Romans pronounced the alphabet and words. We should use the so-called Roman Pronunciation of Latin, which aims to represent approximately the pronunciation of classical times. The English pronunciation should be used in Roman names occurring in English (as, *Julius Caesar*); and in familiar quotations, as, *e pluribus unum; viva voce; vice versa; a fortiori; veni, vidi, vici*, etc.
I. ROMAN ALPHABET

The Roman alphabet contains 25 letters: six vowels and nineteen consonants. The English language also uses the Roman alphabet with the additional letter W. You should learn the Roman alphabet that follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Examples – Latin (English)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aa</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>as in “under”: cáput (head)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bb</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>as in “bath”: bráchium (shoulder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cc</td>
<td>tse</td>
<td>ts</td>
<td>as in “plants”: cérvix (neck)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>k</td>
<td>as in “coner”: cósta (rib), crísta (crest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dd</td>
<td>de</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>as in “danger”: déxter (right)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ee</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>as in “met”: vértebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ff</td>
<td>ef</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>as in “fast”: fácies (surface, face)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gg</td>
<td>ge</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>as in “get”: gáster (stomach)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hh</td>
<td>ha</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>as in “hand”: hómo (man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(english like)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ii</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>as in “sit”: vagina (vagina)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jj</td>
<td>yot</td>
<td>(j)</td>
<td>as in “yes”: májor (large)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kk</td>
<td>ka</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>as in “key”: skéleton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ll</td>
<td>el</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>as in “life”: lábium (lip)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mm</td>
<td>em</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>as in “medical”: meátus (passage)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nn</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>as in “night”: násus (nose)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oo</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>as in “spot”: córpus (body)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pp</td>
<td>pe</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>as in “palmer”: pálpebra (eyelid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qq</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>as in “quite”: quádriceps (four-headed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rr</td>
<td>er</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>as in “rend”: ren (kidney)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II. PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS

The Latin vowels are similar to the corresponding English vowels.

- **a** as in “under”: cáput (head)
- **e** as in “met”: vértebra
- **i** as in “sit”: vagína (vagina)
- **y** as in “crystal”: týmpanum (drum)
- **o** as in “spot”: córpus (body)
- **u** as in “put”: púlmo (lung)

Diphthong is a combination of two vowel pronounced together in one syllable.

- **au** is pronounced as in “down” : áuris (ear)
- **eu** is pronounced [eu] : pléura (pleura)

III. PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS AND DIGRAPHS

The Latin consonants are similar to the corresponding English consonants (see under “Roman alphabet”), except c, g, j, l, s, x and z.
Before e, i, y, ae, oe is pronounced like /ts/. It is similar to the ts of English plants: cérvix /tserviks/- neck: cýstis /tsistis/- bladder; caécum /tsekum/- cecum.

Before a, o, u, before consonants and at the end of a word it is pronounced as /k/: cáput – head: cósta – rib; cutis – skin; crísta – crest; lac – milk.

c Is always pronounced as /g/ in give, get, go.

j Is pronounced as /j/ in yes, you, young.

l Is always palatalized and soft as in look, live, life.

Between two vowels or between a vowel and the voiced consonant m or n is pronounced as /z/ in nose, rose, but before vowels, consonants and at the end of a word it is pronounced as /s/ in solve, slow, maps.

g Is always pronounced as /g/ in give, get, go.

j Is pronounced as /j/ in yes, you, young.

l Is always palatalized and soft as in look, live, life.

Between two vowels or between a vowel and the voiced consonant m or n is pronounced as /z/ in nose, rose, but before vowels, consonants and at the end of a word it is pronounced as /s/ in solve, slow, maps.

x Is pronounced as /ks/ in next, larynx, but sometimes between vowels it is pronounced as /gz/ in examination, example.

In Greek words is always pronounced as /z/ in zero, zone, but in words of other origin such as Zíncum (zinc), influénza (grippe) it is pronounced as /ts/.

One of the main differences between English and Latin consonants is that in Latin p, t, k are not aspirated (i.e. there is no puff of breath after them) as in English.

Another difference is that “l” is always palatalized, or soft.

**Digraph** is a group of two letters representing one sound.

There are two vowel digraphs in Latin:

**ae/oe** Representing the sound similar to the English /e/ in pen: vertebrae (vertebrae), oedema (swelling).

**Attention !!! -** Two dots placed over the letter e indicate that ae or oe are not digraphs and their letters denote different sounds: áër /a-er/- air; diploë /diploe/- spongy substance.

Besides, there are several consonant digraphs commonly used in Latin. They are pronounced as follows:
ch as /kh/: núcha /nuha/ - neck
ph as /f/: rághe /rafe/ - suture
rh as /r/: rhéxis /reksis/ - rupture
th as /t/: thórax /toraks/ - chest

IV. PRONUNCIATION OF LETTER COMBINATIONS

These letter combinations are pronounced as follows:

- ngu as /ngv/ before vowels: língua /lingva/ - tongue, language;
- as /ngu/ before consonants: ángulus /angulus/ - angle

- qu as /kw/ áqua /akwa/ - water
- as /sv/ before vowels a,e: suávis /svavis/ - pleasant;
- as /su/ in different syllables: súlcus /sulkus/ - furrow or groove
- as /tsi/ before vowels: spátium /spatsium/ - space; articulátio /artikuliatsio/ - joint;
- as /ti/ before consonants, after s,t,x: tíbia /tibia/ - shinebone; óstium /ostium/ - opening.

V. EXERCISES

1. Read the following words paying special attention to the vowels:
álá (wing), mínor (small), artéria (artery), lámina (plate), abdómen (belly), fóvea (pit), fíbula (fibula; long, thin outer bone from knee to ankle), fêmur (thigh-bone), línea áspera (rough line), pálma (palm), infundíbulum (funnel), régio (region), inférior (lower), antérior (situated in front of), membrána (membrane), manúbrium stérni (first or upper part of breast-bone), véna (vein), húmerus (bone of upper arm), gingíva (gum), úlna (medial bone of forearm), úvula (lingula), hépar (liver), hílus (hilus).
2. **Read the following words paying special attention to the vowels i and j:**

   intestínum (intestine), íáter (physician, doctor), páries inférior (lower wall),
   ínsula (island), junctúra (junction), júgum (iúgum) (eminence, mound), juguláris
   (iuguláris) (jugular), canális palatinus májor (máior) (greater palatine canal),
   fóssa infratemporális (infratemporal fossa), tubérculum május (máius) (greater
   tubercle), jejúnum (ieiúnunum) (jejenum), ilíacus (iliac).

3. **Read the following words paying special attention to Latin vowel digraphs and diphthongs:**

   áuris (ear), autops ía (necropsy), Áurum (gold), pléura (pleura), neurológia
   (neurology), pneumonia (inflammation of the lungs), cóstae (ribs), oedéma
   (swelling), anaemía (anemia), gangraéna (gangrene), amoéba (ameba), áër (air),
   poéta (poet), Áloë (aloe), aërophóbía (morbid fear of drafts or of fresh air),
   vértébrae (vertebrae), caécus (celiac), oesóphagus (oesophagus), auriculáris
   (auricular), córpus vesicæ félleæ (body of gallbladder), aponeurósis
   (aponeurosis), pseudomembránæ (false membrane), uropoëticus (urogeneus/
   urinogenous), díploë (diploe), aurícula (auricle), haematopoëticus
   (hemopoietic), dýspnoë (dispnea), régio glutaéa (gluteal region), peronaéus
   (fibular), neurocránium (skull), caudális (caudal).

4. **Read the following words paying particular attention to the consonants c, s,
   l, x and z:**

   fácies (surface), cérvix (neck), cérebrum (brain), cístis (cyst), cytológia
   (cytology), cósta (rib), cáput (head), córpus (body), cólumna (pillar), cávum
   (cavity), cólhum (neck), crísta (crest), lac (milk), canális (canal), súlcus (furrow,
   groove), árcus (arch), córnu (horn), stérum (breastbone), scápula (shoulder-
   blade), os (bone), spina (spine), násus (nose), básis (base), plásma (plasma),
   organismus (organism), squámósus (scaly), tuberositas (tuberosity), lóbus
   (lobe), láitus (wide), músculus (muscle), lábium (lip), ángulus (angle), ánulus
   (ring), ápex (top, summit), rádix (root), déxter (right), thórax (chest), xiphoideus
   (swordshaped), zóna (zone), zygóma (cheek-bone), horizontális (horizontal),
cávitas (cavity), ócciput (back of the head), trúncus (trunk), caécus (cecal), claviculáris (clavicular), accessórius (additional), músculus (muscle), scéleton (skeleton), cruciátus (cruciform), ceméntum (cement), căvum cráníi (cavity of skull), sáccus lacrimális (tear sac), cartilágo (cartilage), cóndylus (condyle), bíceps (two-headed), célula (cell), córpus (body), súlci palatíni (palatine grooves), vértebrae cervicáles (cervical vertebrae), vértebrae sacráles (sacral vertebrae), os coccýgis (coccygeal bone), forámina sacrália dorsália (dorsal sacral openings), búcca (cheek), búccae (cheeks).

5. Read the following words paying special attention to the letter combinations ch, ph, qu, rh, th, ngu and ti:
núcha (nape), chóle (bile), chórdas (cord), chártas (paper), phálana (fingerbone), diaphráagma (diaphragm), phárnx (pharynx), água (water), squamósus (scaly), quádriceps (four-headed), rhizóma (rhizome), rhéxis (rupture), rheumatísmus (rheumatism), thórax (chest), rhinorrhag ía (bleeding from the nose), therap ía (treatment), thrómbus (blood clot), língua (tongue, language), únguis (nail), sánguis (blood), unguéntum (ointment), ángulus (angle), linguláris (lingular), trianguláris (triangular), tíbia (shinebone), téstis (testis), tinct úra (tincture), óstium (opening), articulátio (joint), substántia (substance), spátiu (space), solútio (solution), curátio (treatment), vítium (defect)

6. Read the following words paying particular attention to the consonant s:
fásca (cavity), húmerus (bone of upper arm), mesentérium (mesentery), impréssio (impression), sínus (hollow curvature or cavity), sigmoïdeus (sigmoid), séptum nási (nasal septum), canális hypoglossális (hypoglossal canal), procéssus styloídeus (styloid process), básis cráníi (base of skull), segmentum (segment), pars petrósa (petrosal part), chiásm (chiasm), fissúra (fissure (slit)), dens incisívus (incisor tooth), platýsma (subcutaneous neck muscle), mesogástrium (middle part of abdomen), mucósus (mucosal),
nasolacrimális (nasolacrimal), súlcus sínus transvérsi (transversal hollow groove)

7. Read the following words paying particular attention to the pronunciation of *qu* and *ngu*:
squáma occipitális (occipital scale), lámina quadrigémina (quadrigeminal plate), quadrátus (square), vértebra quínta (the fifth vertebra), línea oblíqua (oblique line), língua (tongue, language), língula (small tongue), inguinális (inguinal), únguis (nail), squamósus (scale-like), os tríquetrum (trihedral bone), sublinguális (sublingual), ángulus (angle), sánguis (blood), sanguíneus (circulatory (bloody)).

8. Read the following words paying particular attention to the pronunciation of *ti*:
addúctio (adduction), abdúctio (abduction), periodóntium (peridontium), supinátio (supination), articulátio (joint), eminéntia (eminence), tíbia (shinbone), óstium (mouth, aperture), spátia intercostália (intercostal space), digéstio (digestion), distántia trochantérica (trochanteric distance), substáltia spongiósa (spongy substance), forámina nutricia (nourishing openings), míxtio (mixture), masticátio (chewing).

9. Read the following words paying particular attention to the pronunciation of digraphs and letter combinations:
núcha (nape of neck), thyreoídeus (thyroid), thórax (chest), línea núchae superior (upper nachal line), tubérculum pharyngéum (pharyngeal tubercle), os sphenoidále (wedge-shaped bone), fóssa hypophysiális (hypophysial cavity), labirinthus ethmoidális (cribriform labyrinth), kyphósis (hump back (arterior curvature)), hemisphérium (hemisphere), sectiónes hypothálami (sections of hypothalamus), splanchnológia (splanchnology), sphíncter (sphincter), brónchus (main branch of trachea), dúc tus cholédochus (common bile duct), os scaphoídeum (boat-shaped bone), phalánges (bones of fingers or toes),
sýmphyosis (symphyisis (adhesion)), synchondrosis (synchondrosis), ísthmus (isthmus), trúncus brachicephálicus (brachiocephalic trunk), artéria ophthálmica (ophthalmic artery), véna saphéna (saphenous vein), nódus lympháticus (lymphatic node), dúctus thorácicus (thoracic duct), spinothalámicus (spinothalamic), pars sympáthica (sympathetic part), cávum subarachnoidál (subarachnoidal cavity), os íschii (ischial bone), incisúra ischiádica májor (major ischiadic notch), aquaedúctus mesencéphali (aqueduct of midbrain).

VI. VOCABULARY

Part 1.

1. ala, ae f wing
2. costa, ae f rib
3. crista, ae f crest
4. fibúla, ae f fibula, splint-bone
5. fossa, ae f shallow depression or cavity
6. glandúla, ae f gland
7. lamĭna, ae f plate
8. liněa, ae f line
9. mandibūla, ae f lower jaw
10. maxilla, ae f upper jaw
11. orbĭta, ae f eyesocket
12. porta, ae f entry
13. scapŭla, ae f shoulder blade
14. spina, ae f spine
15. tibīa, ae f shinebone, larger of two bones of leg
16. vena, ae f vein
17. vertēbra, ae f vertebra
### Part 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roman Numeral</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>apertūra, ae f</td>
<td>aperture, opening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>aorta, ae f</td>
<td>main artery of body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>arterīa, ae f</td>
<td>artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>capsūla, ae f</td>
<td>capsule, membrane or saclike structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>chorda, ae f</td>
<td>cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>cochlēa, ae f</td>
<td>cochlea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>columna, ae f</td>
<td>column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>concha, ae f</td>
<td>concha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>fascĭa, ae f</td>
<td>fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>fověa, ae f</td>
<td>small pit or depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>incisūra, ae f</td>
<td>notch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>lingua, ae f</td>
<td>tongue, language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>nucha, ae f</td>
<td>nape of neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>sella, ae f</td>
<td>saddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>sutūra, ae f</td>
<td>suture; line of junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>vagīna, ae f</td>
<td>sheath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>valvūla, ae f</td>
<td>small valva; valve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 2

ACCENT RULES, WORD STRESSING

In this lesson you will:

- Become familiar with the main rules of word stress in Latin

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Division of words into syllables.
II. The main rules for the position of an accent in Latin.
III. Graphically signed stress.
IV. Accent in words of Greek origin.
V. Exercises.
VI. Vocabulary

I. DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES

One of the syllables in a word is always more accentuated than the others. We say that the syllable is stressed.

To determine which syllable is stressed the word should be divided into syllables. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. In Latin syllables are usually counted from the end of a word.

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ar-</th>
<th>te-</th>
<th>ri-</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>(artery)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ar-</th>
<th>ti-</th>
<th>cu-</th>
<th>la-</th>
<th>ti-</th>
<th>o</th>
<th>(joint)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II. THE MAIN RULES FOR THE POSITION OF AN ACCENT IN LATIN.

1. The final syllable of a word is not stressed.
2. In disyllabic words (consisting of two syllables) the second syllable (from the end) is always stressed.
3. In polysyllabic words (consisting of more than two syllables) the second or the third syllable from the end of the word is stressed.

To stress correctly a Latin word you should:

1. divide a word into its syllables,
2. find the next to last syllable,
3. determine whether the next to last syllable is stressed or not. If the next to last syllable is not stressed, the accent is shifted to the third syllable from the end of the word.

The basic rules when the next to last syllable is stressed/not stressed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rules</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Next to last syllable is stressed</td>
<td>1. if it contains a diphthong such as ae, oe: pe – ri – to – naé - um pe – ro – naé - us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. if a vowel of this syllable is followed by two or more consonants or letters «x»; «z»: li- ga- mén-tum ref- lé- xus gly – cy – rrhý – za</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. if it contains such suffixes as: -al-, -ar-, -at-, -in-, -ur-, -os-, -iv-. me- di- á- lis di-gi- tá- tus fib- ró- sus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next to last syllable is not stressed (accent is shifted to the third syllable from the end)</td>
<td>1. if its vowel is followed by another vowel ar- té- ri- a su- pé- ri- or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. if its vowel is followed by such letter combinations as: br, pl, tr, vér- te- bra quá- dru- pl ex trí- que- trus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
III. GRAPHICALLY SIGNED STRESS

If the word can’t be read according to any stress rule you should consult a dictionary.

Both stressed and unstressed syllables are graphically signed with the special marks. Stressed syllables are graphically signed by a stroke (•):

For example: pylōrōs - pylórus.

Unstressed syllables are indicated in this book by a circumflex (˚) on the vowel.

For example: skelēton - skéleton.

IV. ACCENT IN WORDS OF GREEK ORIGIN

As for the words of Greek origin you should pay attention to the following peculiarities:

In Greek clinical terms with the ending -ia the letter «i» is always stressed:

- myopathía - myopathia
- dysentería - dysentery
- hypotonia - hypotension

Except for the words containing Greek root -logia:

- biológia - biology
- pharmacológia - pharmacology
V. EXERCISES

1. Stress the following words observing the rules of Latin word-stressing:
columna, processus, cerebrum, bursa, cavum, palpebra, profundus, transversus, atlas I, internus, bulbus, gangraena, refluxus, cauda, linea, rabies, barba, reflexus, ampulla, collum, tibia, sinister, cornu, spurius, Oryza, situs, xiphoidēus, facies, anatomia, ramus, coccygēus, caries, tabuletta, minorpodagra, pterygoidēus, externus, maxilla, curatio, solutio, substantia, eminentia, Belladonna, ligamentum, vertebra, costa, apex, arcus, minor, manus, vomer, sternum, sella.

2. Stress the words:
apertura (opening), anulus (ring), angulus (angle), foveola (pit), incisura (notch, split), tuberculum (tubercle), spinosus (spinous), thoracicus (thoracic), articularis (articular), opticus (visual), basilaris (basic), cervicalis (cervical), musculus (muscle), fissura (cleft), lateralis (lateral), vertebralis (vertebral), lumbalis (lumbar), fossula (small depression or cavity), ventriculus (ventricle, stomach), glandula (gland), scapula (shoulder-blade), mandibula (lower jaw), clavicula (clavicle), fibula (fibula), maxillaris (maxillary), chronicus (chronic), gastricus (gastric), pelvis (pelvic), fibrosus (fibrous), gelatinosus (gelatinous), venosus (venous), squamosus (scaly), spirituosus (spiritual), capitatus (capitate), destillatus (destilled), ceratus (waxy), auditivus (auditory), vegetativus (vegetative), incubatius (incubative), incisivus (incisive, cutting), junctura (junction), sutura (suture), temperatura (temperature).

3. Practise stressing the following Latin anatomical terms:
costa fluctuans (free rib), vertebra thoracica (thoracic vertebra), columna vertebralis (spinal column), processus articularis superior (higher joint appendix), tuberculum anterius (anterior tubercle), facies articularis anterior
(anterior joint surface), sulcus arteriae vertebralis (vertebral furrow of artery), nucleus pulposus (pulpal nucleus), anulus fibrosus (fibrous ring of tissue about an opening), ligamentum longitudinale anterius (anterior longitudinal ligament), juncturae columnae vertebralis et cranii (junctions of spinal column and skull), articulatio atlantooccipitalis (joint between first cervical vertebra and occipital bone), canalis vertebralis (vertebral canal), sulcus costovertebralis minor (major) (small (large) costovertebral furrow), incisurae costales (costal slits), ligamentum capītis costae (ligament of the head of rib), articulatio capītis costae (joint of the head of rib), spatia intercostalia (intercostal spaces), apertura thorācis superior (inferior) (superior (inferior) thoracic apertura), angulus infrasternalis (angle, situated below or beneath sternum), fissura sterni (narrow slit of breast bone).

4. **Practise stressing the following Latin anatomical terms:**

medulla ossium (bone marrow), arcus vertebrae (vertebral arch), membrum inferius (leg), epigastrium (part of abdomen immediately over stomach), processus transversus (transverse process), substantia compacta (thick substance), palpebra superior (upper eyelid), corpus maxillae (body of upper jaw), quadruplex (fourfold), facies poplitea (popliteal surface), ductus choledochus (bile duct).

5. **Practise stressing the following Latin anatomical terms:**

digitatus (pertaining to finger or toe), hiatus sacralis (sacral opening), cribrosus (sieve-shaped), vertebralis (vertebral), incisura supraorbitalis (supraorbital notch), clavicularis (pertaining to collar-bone), fossa pterygopalatina (pterygopalatine cavity), processus zygomaticus (zygomatic process), hamulus pterygoidēus (wing-shaped hook), mentalis (pertaining to chin), sulcus pulmonalis (pulmonary furrow), forāmen spinosum (spinous opening), fossa glandulae lacrimalis (shallow depression of lacrimal gland), pubicus (pertaining
to lower part of abdomen, covered with hair), pars squamosa (scaly (platelike) part), nodi pancreatici (pancreatic nodes), pelvinus (pelvic), foveolae granulares (small granular spit), glomerulus (small ball), incisura vertebralis (vertebral slit).

6. Practise stressing the following Latin anatomical terms:

alae vomeris (wings of thin bone separating nostrils), pars superior duodeni (upper part of duodenum), cartilagineus (pertaining to cartilage), articulatio sacrococcygea (sacral-coccygeal joint), gingiva (gum), trachea (windpipe), apertura thoracis inferior (lower opening of chest), organon gustus (taste organ), osteologia (science about bones), glossopharyngeus (pertaining to tongue and pharynx), myologia (science about muscles), orbita oculi (eye-pit), pylorus (opening of stomach into duodenum), peritoneum (serous membrane lining abdominal cavity), metathalamus (part of brain behind visual tuber), minimus (smallest), musculus levator fornix (muscle that raises fornix), os coccygis (last bone of spinal column), peroneus (pertaining to fibular bone), carpus (pertaining to wrist), glutaeus (pertaining to buttocks), nervus trigeminus (trigeminal nerve), labirinthus ethmoidalis (sieve-shaped labyrinth (ethmoidal bone)).

7. Practise stressing the following Latin anatomical terms:
lamina arcus vertebrae (plate of vertebral arch), foramen rotundum (round opening), vagina processus styloidei (sheath of awl-shaped appendix), tuberositas pterygoideae (pterygoid tuberosity), palatum osseum (bony palate), ligamentum popliteum obliquum (oblique popliteal ligament), cavitas oris propria (proper oral cavity), atrium meatus medii (atrium middle meatus), cartilago thyroidae (thyroid cartilage), vesica urinaria (bladder), extremitas inferior (lower extremity).

8. Practise stressing the following Latin anatomical terms:
processus accessorius (additional appendix), arcus posterior atlāntis (posterior arch of first cervical vertebra), lineae transversae (transverse lines), eminentia cruciformis (cruciform eminence), facies anterior (anterior surface), os triquetrum (three-sided bone), basis patellae (base of kneecap), recessus sacciformis (sacciform recess), spatia interossea metacarpi (interosseous spaces of metacarpus), labium superius (upper lip), pancreas accessorium (additional pancreas), regio respiratoria (respiratory region), bifurcatio trachēae (bifurcation of trachea).

VI. VOCABULARY

Masculine
1. angŭlus, i m  angle
2. canalicŭlus, i m  small canal
3. muscŭlus, i m  muscle
4. nasus, i m  nose
5. nuclĕus, i m  spheroid body within a cell
6. pedicŭlus, i m  pedicle, small foot
7. radĭus, i m  thicker and shorter bone of forearm
8. sulcus, i m  furrow or groove

Neuter
9. brachĭum, i n  upper arm
10. cavum, i n  cavity
11. collum, i n  neck
12. cranĭum, i n  skull
13. dorsum, i n  back
14. membrum, i n  member, extremity
15. palātum, i n  palate
16. septum, i n  partition, dividing wall
17. tubercŭlum, i n  tubercle; small rounded swelling
LESSON 3

STRUCTURE OF ANATOMICAL TERMS. NOUN AND ITS GRAMMATICAL CATEGORIES

In this lesson you will:

• Become familiar with structure of anatomical terms.
• Learn grammatical categories of Latin nouns.
• Learn how to determine the stem, the gender and the declension of nouns.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Anatomical terminology.
II. Structure of anatomical terms.
III. Grammatical categories of a noun.
IV. Gender
V. Number
VI. Case
VII. Dictionary form of a noun.
VIII. Declension
IX. Stem of nouns
X. Exercises.
XI. Vocabulary

I. ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

Anatomical terminology is a system of terms used in Anatomy. The revision of modern anatomical terminology was initiated in 1887. More than a hundred years later the new Terminologia Anatomica - International Anatomical Terminology was finally accepted by the International Federation of Association of Anatomists (IFAA) in 1997. Anatomical terminology is the foundation of medical terminology and Latin is the international anatomical language. Only
Latin is the international basis for creating equivalent terms in other languages. English is not the basis for terminology in other languages.

There is only a very little Latin grammar necessary to dissect anatomical terms. One needs only know about nouns and adjectives, and even then only two cases in the singular and plural. The two cases are Nominative (subjective) and Genitive (possessive).

**Noun** is a name of a thing: digĭtus (finger), costa (rib) etc.

**Adjective** is a word expressing a quality of a thing: major (large), longus (long), frontālis (frontal).

**II. STRUCTURE OF ANATOMICAL TERMS**

The **anatomical term** is a word used to name a definite unit or structure of a human body. Anatomical terms may consist of one, two, three, four and more words (up to 8).

1. **One-Word Terms**

   They consist of one noun in singular or plural:

   *Costa (rib), costae (ribs)*

2. **Two-Word Terms**

   They may consist of:

   a. two nouns in singular or plural: *corpus vertēbrae (body of vertebra), corpŏra vertebrārum (bodies of vertebrae)*

   b. a noun with an adjective: *vertēbra thoracīca (thoracic vertebra)*

3. **Three-Word Terms**

   They may consist of:

   a. three nouns: *ligamentum tubercūli costae (ligament of tubercle of rib)*

   b. a noun and two adjectives: *processus articulāris superīor (superior articular process)*

   c. two nouns and an adjective: *sulcus nervi spinālis (furrow of the spinal nerve)*
4. Multiword Terms

They may consist of several nouns and adjectives in singular and plural:

Facēs temporālis alae minōris ossis sphenoidālis (temporal surface of the smaller wing of the sphenoid bone).

III. GRAMMATICAL CATEGORIES OF A NOUN

The grammatical categories of a noun are as follows:

1. Gender
2. Number
3. Case
4. Declension

GENDER

There are three genders in Latin: masculine (masculīnum), feminine (feminīnum) and neuter (neutrum). In contrast to Latin English nouns have only a natural gender, i.e. according to their sex: nouns designating males are masculine (man, boy), nouns designating females are feminine (woman, girl), and nouns designating inanimates are in the neuter gender.

Latin nouns have grammatical gender. Their gender is determined by the ending of Nominative singular.

Thus, nouns ending in -a are feminine: scapūla (shoulder blade), nouns ending in –us are masculine: muscūlus (muscle), nouns ending in –um are neuter etc.

The genders of a noun are indicated in the dictionaries with the letters:

- m - masculine
- f - feminine
- n – neuter
**NUMBER**

In common with English there are two numbers in Latin - **singular** (singulāris) and **plural** (plurālis). Number is the grammatical category showing whether we speak of one thing or more than one. In English the plural is formed by the endings –s or –es. In Latin the ending of the plural varies according to the gender and declension:

*Vertebrae (vertebrae), nervi (nerves), corpōra (bodies), facēs (surfaces)* etc.

**CASE**

Case is defined as the change of the noun form according to its relation to other words. In modern English we can speak about “common case” and “possessive case”. In contrast to English there are six cases in Latin, but only **two cases** are used in the anatomical terminology:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin and abbreviation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Nominativus (Nom.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>Genetivus (Gen.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Nominative** indicates the subject and answers the questions **who, what**.

**Genitive** indicates the possession and answers the questions **whose, of what**.

**IV. DICTIONARY FORM OF A NOUN**

You should learn Latin nouns in their “Dictionary Form”. The dictionary form of a noun consists of **three components**:

1. the full form of Nominative singular;
2. the Genitive singular ending;
3. the designation of gender (with the letters m, f, n).

E.g.: ala, ae f - *wing*;
sternum, i n - breast bone;

ductus, us m - duct.

V. DECLENSION

There are five declensions in Latin; that is, **five categories of nouns**, each with its own endings. The declension is determined by the Genitive singular endings.

**First declension**

The nouns of **feminine** which end in -a are ascribed to the first declension. The Genitive form of the first declension nouns ends in –ae.

E.g.: costa, ae f - rib

vertebra, ae f - vertebra

**Second declension**

To the second declension are referred **masculines** which end in –us and –er, and **neuters** which end in –um, -on. The Genitive form of the second declension nouns ends in –i.

E.g.: nasus, i m - nose;

collum, i n - neck;

olecranon, i n - tip of the elbow;

cancer, cri m - cancer.

**Attention!!! – In the anatomical terminology there are no nouns which end in –er. The ending –on have the following anatomical terms:**

- acromion, i n – acromial process
- colon, i n – large intestine
- encephalon, i n – brain
- ganglion, i n – ganglion
- olecranon, i n - tip of the elbow
**Third declension**

The third declension includes nouns of **all the three genders** which have **different endings** in Nominative singular and –is in Genitive singular.

**E.g.:** canālis, is m - canal; regīo, ōnis f - region; os, ossis n - bone.

**Fourth declension**

The fourth declension includes masculines which end in –us, and the neuters which end with –u. The Genitive singular form of these nouns ends in –us.

**E.g.:** arcus, us m - arch; cornu, us n – horn.

**Attention!!!** - In the anatomical terminology there are only two neuters of the 4th declension which end in –u: cornu, us n (horn), genu, us n (knee).

**Attention!!!** - In the anatomical terminology there is only a limited number of masculines of the fourth declension. You should remember some of them as follows:

- aqu(a)eductus, us m  \(\textit{aqueduct}\)
- arcus, us m  \(\textit{arch}\)
- ductus, us m  \(\textit{duct}\)
- meātus, us m  \(\textit{tract}, \textit{passage}\)
- processus, us m  \(\textit{process}\)
- sinus, us m  \(\textit{sinus}; \textit{hollow}\)
- textus, us m  \(\textit{tissue}\)
Fifth declension

The fifth declension includes nouns of feminine which end in –es in Nominative singular and in -ei in Genitive singular.

E.g.: faciēs, ēi f – surface, face (this is the only noun of the fifth declension you meet in the exercises).

Remember the endings of Nominative and Genitive singular of all declensions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Declension</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
<th>V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative singular endings</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>um</td>
<td>different</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive singular endings</td>
<td>ae</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>ēi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VI. STEM OF NOUNS

To make a Genitive form from the Nominative form you should determine the stem of the noun. To determine the stem you should detach the ending from the noun:

E.g.:  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dictionary form</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crista, ae f</td>
<td>crist - ae</td>
<td>crist -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collum, i n</td>
<td>coll – i</td>
<td>coll -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciēs, ēi f</td>
<td>faci – ēi</td>
<td>faci -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pars, partis f</td>
<td>part – is</td>
<td>part -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vomer, ēris m</td>
<td>vomēr - is</td>
<td>vomēr -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caput, ītis n</td>
<td>capīt - is</td>
<td>capit -</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VII. EXERCISES

1. **Make up the dictionary form of nouns:**

arcus (arch), bulbus (bulb; any rounded mass), concha (concha), incisūra (slit or notch), sulcus (furrow or groove), cornu (horn), nasus (nose), amnion (amnion), tubercūlum (tubercle; small rounded swelling), scapūla (shoulder blade), adĭtus (enter), septum (dividing wall), ganglion (nerve node), collum (neck), porus (opening, pore), fossa (shallow depression or cavity), encephālon (brain), colon (part of large intestine), olecrānon (elbow appendix), muscūlus (muscle), ramus (branch), genu (knee), nodus (node), pleura (membrane lining chest and covering lungs), lingua (tongue; language), sinus (cavity, sinus), orgānon (organ).

2. **Determine the declension of the nouns:**

facies, ēi f (surface); pars, partis f (part); ala, ae f (wing); magister, tri m (teacher); nervus, i m (nerve); ramus, i m (branch); sphincter, ēris m (sphincter); colon, i n (part of large intestine); plexus, us m (network, chiefly of veins or nerves); forāmen, ĭnis n (opening); ligamentum, i n (ligament); dens, dentis m (tooth); tuber, ēris n (thickend portion of underground stem; rounded swelling); tempus, ŏris n (temple, time); genu, us n (knee); articulatio, ŏnis f (joint); cartilāgo, ĭnis f (cartilage); meniscus, i m (meniscus); diaphragma, ātis n (septum between thorax and abdomen, diaphragm); canālis, is m (canal); cervix, īcis f (neck).

3. **Pay attention to the word order:**

spina scapūlae (spine of shoulder bone); raphe palāti (suture of palate); skelēton membri (skeleton of a limb); ossa cranii (bones of skull); fossa glandūlae (cavity of gland); vena portae (portal vein); septum nasi (dividing wall of nose); crista tubercūli (crest of tubercle); processus radii (appendix of radial bone); caput
fibulae (head of fibular bone); corpus tibiae (body of shin bone); facies acromii (surface of acromion); linea nuchae (line of neck nape); sulcus sinus (furrow of sinus); basis cranii (base of skull); angulus mandibulae (angle of lower jaw).

4. Determine the gender of the nouns:

septum (dividing wall); substantia (substance, material); encephalon (brain); oculus, i (eye); nasus, i (nose); scapula (shoulder blade); arcus, us (arch); acromion (acromion); lingua (tongue, language); mandibula (lower jaw); processus, us (appendix); cranium (skull); dorsum (back); incisura (slit or notch); clavicula (collar-bone); skeleton (skeleton); cornu (horn); meatus, us (passage); palatum (palate); humerus, i (humeral bone); lympha (lymph); cerebrum (brain); concha (concha); maxilla (upper jaw); ductus, us (duct); olecranon (elbow appendix); tuberculum (tubercle); lamina (plate); ramus, i (branch); ganglion (nerve node); vertebra (vertebra; each segment of vertebral column); sinus, us (sinus).

5. Pay attention to the word order:

collum costae (scapulae) (neck of rib (shoulder blade)); corpus fibulae (humeri, maxillae, tibiae) (head of fibular bone (humeral bone, upper jaw, shin bone)); incisura mandibulae (scapulae) (notch of lower jaw (shoulder blade)); radix dentis (linguae) (root of tooth (tongue)); angulus costae (mandibulae) (angle of rib (lower jaw)).

6. Translate terms into Latin:

muscle of neck; capsule of nerve node; back of saddle; tuber of upper jaw; body of vertebra, head of rib; arch of aorta; notch of lower jaw; base of skull; cavity of nose; passage of nose; neck of shoulder blade; sheath of process; aperture of colear canalculus; crest of the costal head; canalculus (small canal) of chorda tympani; ligament of the costal tubercle; plate of arch (of vertebra); wing of
cock’s crest; aperture of aqueduct of vestibule; vestibule of nose; dividing wall of nose; base of cochlea; small pit of process; small foot of arch of vertebra; surface of the costal tubercle.

VIII. VOCABULARY

2nd declension

1. acromion, i n shoulder appendix
2. antrum, i n cavity
3. gallus, i m cock
4. ganglion, i n nervous node
5. ligamentum, i n ligament
6. lobe, i m lobe
7. nodus, i m node
8. ramus, i m branch
9. skelēton, i n skeleton
10. truncus, i m trunk
11. tympanum, i n tympanum
12. vestibulum, i n vestibule

3rd declension

13. basis, is f base
14. canalis, is m canal
15. caput, ĕtis n head
16. corpus, ōris n body
17. foramen, ĕnis n opening
18. os, ossis n bone
19. pars, partis f part
20. tuber, ĕris n large rounded swelling
### 4th declension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Phrase</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21.arcus, us m</td>
<td>arch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.aquaeductus, us m</td>
<td>water duct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.cor[nu, us n]</td>
<td>horn; horn-shaped process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.ductus, us m</td>
<td>duct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.meātus, us m</td>
<td>passage, tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.plexus, us m</td>
<td>network; chiefly of veins and nerves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.processus, us m</td>
<td>process; appendix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.sinus, us m</td>
<td>hollow or cavity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5th declension

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Phrase</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>29.facīes, ēi f</td>
<td>face, surface</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 4

ADJECTIVE. TWO GROUPS OF ADJECTIVES

In this lesson you will:

• Become familiar with the characteristics of Latin adjectives.
• Learn morphological categories of Latin adjectives.
• Learn how to find the stem and the declension of adjectives.
• Learn how to make grammatical agreement of adjectives with nouns.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Introduction.
II. The 1st group of adjectives.
III. The 2nd group of adjectives.
IV. Adjectives of one form for all genders.
V. Agreement of adjectives and nouns.
VI. Exercises.
VII. Vocabulary

I. INTRODUCTION

Adjective is a word expressing a quality of a thing: major (large), longus (long), frontālis (frontal).

In all Latin terms the position of adjectives is after the noun with which it has grammatical agreement.

According to their endings all Latin adjectives can be divided into two groups: the first and the second group.

II. THE 1ST GROUP OF ADJECTIVES

The adjectives of the 1st group have different forms for every gender:
Masculine  Feminine  Neuter
Nominative  longus  longa  longum
Genitive  longi  longae  longi

These adjectives are declined on the pattern of the 1st and 2nd declensions. They have identical Nominative and Genitive forms with nouns: masculine –us (-i), feminine –a (-ae), neuter –um (-i).

Their dictionary form consists of three components:
1. adjective in the masculine form;
2. the feminine ending;
3. the neuter ending.

E.g.: transversus, a, um (transverse); internus, a, um (internal); profundus, a, um (profound).

The stem of the 1st group adjectives is obtained from the Nominative form by removing the gender ending:

- longus    stem: long-
- transversum    stem: transvers-
- externa    stem: extern-

The adjectives ending in –er fall also into this adjective group. In the anatomical terminology only some of them are used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>Dictionary Form</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dexter</td>
<td>dextra</td>
<td>dextrum</td>
<td>dexter, tra, trum</td>
<td>right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinister</td>
<td>sinistra</td>
<td>sinistrum</td>
<td>sinister, tra, trum</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber</td>
<td>libēra</td>
<td>libērum</td>
<td>liber, ēra, ērum</td>
<td>free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruber</td>
<td>rubra</td>
<td>rubrum</td>
<td>ruber, bra, brum</td>
<td>red</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As for the stem of adjectives with the ending -er in masculine it is obtained from the Nominative form by removing the feminine ending.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dictionary Form</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dexter, tra, trum</td>
<td>dextra</td>
<td>dextr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinister, tra, trum</td>
<td>sinistra</td>
<td>sinistr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruber, bra, brum</td>
<td>rubra</td>
<td>rubr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber, ēra, ērum</td>
<td>libēra</td>
<td>liber-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### III. THE 2ND GROUP OF ADJECTIVES

Into this group fall adjectives of the 3rd declension. The adjectives of the 2nd group are the adjectives of the frontālis type:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>frontāliš</td>
<td>frontāliš</td>
<td>frontāliš</td>
<td>frontāle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As indicated in the table the adjectives of this group have identical Nominative masculine and feminine forms ending in –is and the neuter ending –e. The Genitive form is identical for all genders.

Their dictionary form consists of two components:

1. the common masculine and feminine Nominative form;
2. the neuter ending –e.

E.g.: frontāliš, e (frontal); cervicāliš, e (cervical).

The stem of the 2nd group adjectives is obtained from the Nominative form by removing the gender ending:

- vertebrāliš stem: vertebrāl-
- temporāliš stem: temporāl-
IV. THE 2\textsuperscript{ND} GROUP ADJECTIVES OF ONE FORM FOR ALL GENDERS

In the anatomical terminology some adjectives of one form for all genders are used. In the dictionary form of such adjectives the Nominative form (common for all genders) is first indicated, and then the Genitive ending with the stem part.

Remember these adjectives:

- \textit{simplex, įcis} \quad \textit{simple}
- \textit{multĭplex, įcis} \quad \textit{multiple}
- \textit{teres, ětis} \quad \textit{round}

The stem of such adjectives is obtained from the Genitive form singular by removing the ending.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dictionary form</th>
<th>Gen. Singular</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>simplex, įcis</td>
<td>simplĭcis</td>
<td>simplĭc-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multĭplex, įcis</td>
<td>multiplĭcis</td>
<td>multiplĭc-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teres, ětis</td>
<td>terětis</td>
<td>terět-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

V. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS

To agree a noun and an adjective means to use them in the same Gender, Number and Case.

To agree a noun and an adjective you should:

1. determine gender, number and case of the noun;
2. determine group of the adjective by its dictionary form;
3. agree the adjective and the noun by gender, number and case.

For example, you translate from English into Latin the following anatomical terms: \textit{mastoid process, vertebral foramen}. 
• *Process* – *processus*: gender - masculine, singular, Nominative. *Mastoid* – *mastoidēus, a, um*: adjective of the 1st group. We agree the adjective *mastoidēus* in the masculine gender, singular number, Nominative case: *processus mastoidēus*.

• *Foramen* – *forāmen*: neuter, singular, Nominative. *Vertebral* – *vertebrālis, e*: adjective of the 2nd group. We agree the adjective *vertebrālis* in the neuter gender, singular number, Nominative case: *forāmen vertebrāle*.

VI. EXERCISES

1. *Translate the following terms into Latin according to grammatical agreement:*

pharyngeal network; deep cervical lymphatic node; oval opening; thoracic fascia; transverse palatine raphe; stony branch; internal capsule; middle temporal artery; spinous opening; parietal lobe; superficial vein.

2. *Translate the following terms into Latin according to grammatical agreement:*

articular process of vertebra; bony septum of nose; palatine process of upper jaw; valve of coronary sinus; middle fossa of skull; left lumbar trunk.

3. *Translate the following terms into Latin according to grammatical agreement:*

ligament of vertebral column; fibrous capsule of thyroid gland; furrow (groove) of occipital artery; aperture of frontal sinus.

4. *Translate the following terms into Latin according to grammatical agreement:*

pulmonary surface; lateral ligament; right plate; palatine process; vertebral ganglion (nerve node); costal arch; frontal crest; occipital angle; medial head;
sacral canal; superficial vein; simple joint; medial root; costal surface; arched (arch-shaped) crest.

5. Make up grammatical agreement of the following adjectives with the given nouns:

1. sulcus, i m  ligamentum, i n  transversus, a, um
   linea, ae f
2. sulcus, i m  palatīnus, a, um
   os, ossis n  processus, us m
3. sutūra, ae f  frontālis, e
   angūlus, i m  tuber, ĕris n
4. valvūla, ae f  venōsus, a, um
   plexus, us m  sinus, us m
5. processus, us m  articulāris, e
   facies, ĕi f  tubercūlum, i n
6. muscūlus, i m  pterygoidēus, a um
   fossa, ae f
7. arcus, us m  zygomatīcus, a, um
   os, ossis n
8. facies, ĕi f  internus, a, um
   ganglion, i n

6. Make up Genitive forms of the following adjectives:

1. cervicālis, e 7. thoracīcus, a, um
2. internus, a, um 8. medius, a, um
3. sinister, tra, trum 9. lumbālis, e
4. simplex, ĭcis 10. laterālis, e
5. osseus, a, um 11. temporālis, e
6. lymphatīcus, a, um 12. vertebrālis, e
VII. VOCABULARY

1st group of adjectives

1. coronarĭus, a, um coronary
2. fibrōsus, a, um fibrous
3. internus, a, um internal
4. lymphatĭcus, a, um lymphatic
5. mastoidēus, a, um mammiform
6. medĭus, a, um middle
7. ossĕus, a, um bony
8. palatīnus, a, um palatine
9. petrōsus, a, um stony
10. pharyngēus, a, um pharyngeal
11. profundus, a, um deep
12. pterygoidēus, a, um wing-shaped, pterygoid
13. sinister, tra, trum left
14. spinōsus, a, um spinous
15. thoracĭcus, a, um thoracic
16. thyreoideus, a, um thyroid
17. transversus, a, um transverse
18. venōsus, a, um venous
19. zygomaticus, a, um zygomatic

2nd group of adjectives

20. arciformis, e arch-shaped
21. articulāris, e articular
22. cervicālis, e cervical
23. ethmoidālis, e sieve-shaped
24. frontālis, e frontal
25. horizontālis, e horizontal
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Latin Term</th>
<th>English Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>laterālis, e</td>
<td>lateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>lumbālis, e</td>
<td>lumbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>occipitālis, e</td>
<td>occipital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>orbitālis, e</td>
<td>orbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>ovālis, e</td>
<td>oval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>parietālis, e</td>
<td>parietal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>pulmonālis, e</td>
<td>pulmonary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>sagittālis, e</td>
<td>sagital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>sphenoidālis, e</td>
<td>wedge-shaped, sphenoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>superficiālis, e</td>
<td>superficial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>temporālis, e</td>
<td>temporal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>vertebrālis, e</td>
<td>vertebral</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 5

DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

In this lesson you will:

• Become familiar with the degrees of comparison.
• Learn how to form the comparative degree.
• Learn how to form the superlative degree.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Introduction: Degrees of comparison.
II. The comparative degree.
III. The superlative degree.
IV. Exercises.
V. Vocabulary

I. INTRODUCTION: DEGREES OF COMPARISON

The adjectives are gradable. This means that the person or thing referred to can possess more or less of the quality mentioned. The usual way to indicate the amount of a quality in Latin is by adding specific suffixes to the word’s stem.

There are three degrees of comparison of adjectives in Latin:

• Positive degree: The positive degree expresses a quality of thing or person for itself, without comparing to a similar quality of other things or persons. It is the basic form of adjective, by which it is presented in the dictionaries: longus, a, um; frontālis, e.

• Comparative degree.

• Superlative degree.
II. THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE

The comparative degree expresses a higher quality of thing or person as compared with the same quality of other things or persons. It is formed by adding the suffixes –īor for masculine & feminine and –īus for neuter to the stem of adjectives (obtained from the genitive form without its ending).

The dictionary form of the adjectives has two components:
1. Nominative singular masculine & feminine form with the suffix –īor;
2. Suffix –īus of the Nominative singular neuter form.

E.g.: anterior, īus

You should remember the adjectives in comparative degree used in the anatomical terminology:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine &amp; feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>Genitive form</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Dictionary form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anterior</td>
<td>anterius</td>
<td>anteriōris</td>
<td>anterior</td>
<td>anterior, ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterior</td>
<td>posterius</td>
<td>posteriōris</td>
<td>posterior</td>
<td>posterior, ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superior</td>
<td>superius</td>
<td>superiōris</td>
<td>upper, superior</td>
<td>superior, ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferior</td>
<td>inferius</td>
<td>inferiōris</td>
<td>lower, inferior</td>
<td>inferior, ius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>major</td>
<td>majus</td>
<td>majōris</td>
<td>great, greater, major</td>
<td>major, jus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor</td>
<td>minus</td>
<td>minōris</td>
<td>small, lesser, minor</td>
<td>minor, us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples of different English translations of the comparative degree:

1) Lat. Tubercŭlum majus (humĕri) - Eng. Greater tubercle of humeri
2) Lat. Forāmen occipitāle magnum - Eng. Great occipital foramen
3) Lat. Nervus petrōsus major - Eng. Greater petrosal nerve
4) Lat. Nervus occipitālis major - Eng. Greater occipital nerve
5) Lat. Nervus auriculāris magnus - Eng. Great auricular nerve
The **stem of the adjectives** in the comparative degree coincides with the Nominative masculine & feminine form terminated by –ior. The comparative degree is declined on the pattern of the 3rd declension. The Genitive singular form in the comparative degree is formed by adding the ending –is to the stem.

**E.g.:** stem - *superior* + Genitive ending of the 3rd declension –is = superiōris for masculine & feminine & neuter.

The adjectives in the comparative degree are placed on the last position:

**E.g.:** nervus cutanēus brachīi laterālis inferiōr – *inferior lateral cutaneous nerve of the arm*

### III. THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE

The superlative degree expresses a highest quality of thing or person as compared with the same quality of other things or persons.

You should remember the adjectives in superlative degree used in the anatomical terminology:

- **Latissīmus, a, um** *broadest*
- **Longissīmus, a, um** *longest*
- **Maxīmus, a, um** *greatest*
- **Minīmus, a, um** *least*
- **Suprēmus, a, um** *supreme*

The dictionary form of the adjectives in the superlative degree coincides with the dictionary form of the 1st group adjectives and consists of **three components:**

1. adjective in the masculine form;
2. the feminine ending;
3. the neuter ending.

The superlative degree is declined on the pattern of the 1st and 2nd declensions, i.e. the adjectives have the masculine & neuter genitive ending –i, and the feminine genitive ending –ae.

VI. EXERCISES

1. Make up the dictionary form of the adjectives:

brevior (shorter); longior (longer); minor (small, minor); major (great, greater, major); anterior (anterior); posterior (posterior); superior (upper, superior); inferior (lower, inferior); simplicior (simpler).

2. Translate into Latin and make up grammatical agreement of the following nouns:

lower (sinus, part, spine); small (tubercle, opening, fossa); anterior (sulcus, tubercle, crest, opening, ligament); posterior (arch, surface, ligament); higher (process, opening, slit); great (sulcus, wing, head); small and great (horn).

3. Make up Genitive singular forms, find the stem:

major, jus (great, major); albior, ius (white); minor, us (small, minor); latior, ius (wider); inferior, ius (lower); simplicior, ius (simpler); superior, ius (upper, superior); longior, ius (longer); brevior, ius (shorter); posterior, ius (posterior); anterior, ius (anterior).

4. Make up Genitive singular forms:

tuberculum obturatorium posterius (posterior obturative tubercle); processus superior (superior process); incisura ischiadica major (greater ischiadic slit); foramen superius (superior opening); ramus superior (superior branch); arcus posterior (posterior arch); incisura superior (superior slit); labium inferius (lower lip); facies posterior (posterior surface); cornu majus et minus (small and great
horn); caput majus (greater head); ligamentum posterius (posterior ligament); sulcus major (greater sulcus), ala major (greater wing).

5. Make up grammatical agreement of following adjectives with nouns:

- tuberculum thyr(е)oidе... superi... (superior thyroid tubercle);
- fissуra orbitаl... inferi... (lower orbital fissure);
- linea glutе... anteri... (anterior gluteal line);
- forаmen ethmoidаl... anter... (anterior ethmoidal opening);
- spіна tympanic... min... (small tympanic spine);
- processus articulаr... inferi... (lower articular process);
- plexus hypogastrиc... superi... (superior hypogastric network);
- ligamentum longituдинаl... anteri... (anterior longitudinal ligament).

6. Translate into Latin:

a) small tubercle; small horn; small pelvis
b) anterior arch; anterior plate; anterior leg
c) superior angle; superior surface; superior lip

7. Make up Genitive singular forms:

- facies anterior (anterior surface);
- angуlus inferior (lower angle);
- cornu majus (greater horn);
- ganglion superius (superior ganglion (nerve node));
- pelvis minor (small pelvis);
- tuberculum majus (greater tubercle);
- arcus posterior (posterior arch);
- radix anterior (anterior root).

8. Determine the case of each word and the part of speech:

- facies anterior partis petrōsaе;
- linea temporālis superior;
- fovea articulāris processus articulаris superiоris;
- alа minor ossis sphenoidаlis;
- arcus dentālis inferior;
- processus articulаris superior vertebrаe lumbаlis;
- ramus dexter venae portae;
- muscǔlus palpebrae superiоris;
- crista tubercǔli majōris;
- sulcus nervi petrōsi majōris;
- caput superius muscǔli pterygoidеi laterаlis;
- tuberculum mediаle
processus posteriōris tali; pars laterālis ossis occipitālis; hiātus canālis nervi petrōsi minōris; nervus cutanēus brachii laterālis inferior; processus maxillāris conchae nasālis inferiōris; ligamentum longitudināle anterius columnae vertebrālis.

9. Translate into Latin using superlative degree:
gluteus maximus muscle; the longest muscle of neck; superior nuchal line; longissimus chest muscle; supreme nasal concha; the widest back muscle bursa; gluteus minimus muscle; the widest back muscle; scalenus minimus muscle; little (the fifth) finger.

VII. VOCABULARY

1. brevis, e short
2. bulbus, i m bulb
3. bursa, ae f pouch, sac
4. cavus, a, um caval, hollow
5. cervix, īcis f neck
6. cingūlum, i n girdle
7. cutanēus, a, um cutaneous
8. dexter, tra, trum right
9. digītus, i m finger; toe
10. glutaeus, a, um pertaining to buttocks
11. hyoidēus, a, um sublingual, hypoglossal
12. jugulāris, e jugular
13. longitudinālis, e longitudinal, lengthwise
14. mediālis, e medial
15. nasālis, e nasal
16. nervus, i m nerve
17. ostīum, i n mouth, aperture, opening
18. palpēbra, ae f eyelid
19. scalēnus, a, um stairs-shaped
20. talus, i m  
   ankle bone, talus

21. tendo, ĭinis m  
   tendon

22. thorax, ācis m  
   chest

23. tibiālis, e  
   tibial

**Positive degree of comparison**

24. magnus, a, um  
   large, great

25. parvus, a, um  
   little, small

**Comparative degree**

26. anterīor, ĭus  
   anterior, front

27. inferīor, ĭus  
   lower

28. major, us  
   large

29. minor, us  
   small

30. posterīor, ĭus  
   back

31. superīor, ĭus  
   higher, upper

**Superlative degree**

32. latissīmus, a, um  
   widest

33. longissīmus, a, um  
   longest

34. maxīmus, a, um  
   largest

35. minīmus, a, um  
   smallest

36. suprēmus, a, um  
   highest
LESSON 6

LATIN THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS.
MASCULINE GENDER

In this lesson you will:

• Become familiar with the Latin third declension nouns.
• Learn how to find the stem of the third declension nouns.
• Learn the endings of the masculine third declension nouns.
• Become familiar with the structure of muscles names.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Particularities of the third declension.
II. Stem of Latin third declension nouns.
III. Endings of Latin third declension nouns.
IV. Exceptions to the rule of the masculine third declension nouns
endings.
V. Latin muscle names.
VI. Exercises.
VII. Vocabulary

I. PARTICULARITIES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

The third declension includes nouns of all the three genders which have
different endings in Nominative singular and –is in Genitive singular.

Parisyllaba and imparisyllaba third declension nouns

The Latin nouns of the 3rd declension can be divided into parisyllaba and
imparisyllaba.

The first group includes a few feminine nouns that have equal number of
syllables in Nominative singular and Genitive singular, such as:
auris, is f – ear

cutis, is f – skin

The nouns that have one more syllable in Genitive singular than in Nominative singular are called imparisyllaba, cf. the following examples:

corpus, ōris n – body

caput, ītis n – head

II. STEM OF LATIN THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

The stem determination of Latin third declension nouns is of great practical significance because the stem gives the clue to the formation of most of the other forms, for example of plural forms.

The stem of nouns of the 3rd declension is determined by the Genitive singular form.

The stem of nouns of the 3rd declension is obtained from the Genitive singular form by dropping the ending –is.

E.g.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Genitive (with a part of the stem)</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>forāmen, īnis n →</td>
<td>foramin-is</td>
<td>opening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caput, ītis n →</td>
<td>capīt-is</td>
<td>head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parīes, ētis m →</td>
<td>pariēt-is</td>
<td>wall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

III. ENDINGS OF LATIN THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

Most nouns ending by –os, –or, –o, –er, –ex, –es (imparisyllaba) are masculine, cf.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endings</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Genitive (with a part of the stem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. - os</td>
<td>- ōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. - or</td>
<td>- ōris</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. EXCEPTIONS TO THE RULE OF THE MASCULINE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS ENDINGS

The following nouns having masculine endings are feminine:

a. arbor, ōris f – tree (arbor vitae cerebelli – medullary body of vermis)

b. gaster, tris f (Greek) - stomach;

c. mater, tris f – cerebral coat
   • pia mater - pia mater of brain
   • dura mater - dura mater of brain

Attention!!! - In these terms the noun «mater» follows an adjective.

The following nouns having masculine endings are neuter:

a. cor, cordis n - heart;

b. os, ossis n - bone;

c. os, oris n - mouth;

d. tuber, ĕris n - tuber.

V. LATIN MUSCLE NAMES

The Latin muscle names are composed of two elements:

1) the first element is the noun «muscle» - «muscūlus»;
2) the second element is a masculine noun ending in –or (-ōris) or –er (-ēris).

**E.g.:** muscūlus flexor – flexor muscle

In the Latin Anatomical Nomenclature all the muscle names are **masculine third declension nouns** ending in:

- **or, ōris m** (e.g.: rotātor, ōris m);
- **er, ēris m** (e.g.: massēter, ēris m).

The Latin muscle names are usually translated into English without a word “muscle”, *cf.:

- **muscūlus massēter** - chewer;
- **muscūlus levātor** – elevator etc.

Most of the muscle names are not translated but transliterated, i.e. reproduced with the Latin letters:

E.g.: muscūlus pronātor – pronator.

**Word order in the Latin muscle names:**

1) word **muscūlus** in Nominative;

2) name of the muscle – a masculine noun in Nominative ending in –or (-ōris) or –er (-ēris).

3) any other noun is in **Genitive**;

4) **adjectives** are placed at the end of the term.

**E.g.:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>Final position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Muscūlus</td>
<td>constrictor</td>
<td>pharyngis</td>
<td>medius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscūlus</td>
<td>tensor</td>
<td>fasciae</td>
<td>latae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VI. EXERCISES

1. **Make up grammatical agreement of the adjectives with the given nouns:**

1) tuber (frontālis, e; parietālis, e; major, jus; minor, us)
2) pulmo (dexter, tra, trum; sinister, tra, trum)
3) mater (pius, a, um; durus, a, um)
4) venter (posterior, ius; frontālis, e)
5) os (nasālis, e; hyoidēus, a, um; frontālis, e; parietālis, e)
6) paries (laterālis, e; jugulāris, e; anterior, ius; tympanīcus, a, um)

2. **Translate into Latin:**

1) tensor muscle of tympanic membrane
2) inferior constrictor muscle of pharynx
3) elevator muscle of scapula
4) rotator muscle of neck
5) elevator muscle of thyroid gland
6) depressor muscle of lower lip

3. **Translate into Latin:**

cortex of cerebellum, cortex of brain, cortex of lymphatic node, small (great) trochanter, heart apex, left (right) lung, sublingual bone, first chamber of the heart (atrium), dura mater of brain, frontal tuber, sulcus of vomer, medial surface of lung, floor of tympanic cavity, wedge-shaped bone, membranous wall of trachea, frontal wall of stomach, small horn of sublingual bone, zygomatic process of temporal bone, ethmoidal sulcus of nasal bone, notch of heart apex.
### VII. VOCABULARY

1. *apex*, ĭcis m  
   - apex, top, tip

2. *atrĭum*, i n  
   - first chamber of the heart (atrium)

3. *cardiācus*, a, um  
   - cardiac

4. *cerebellum*, i n  
   - cerebellum

5. *cerēbrum*, i n  
   - brain

6. *cochleāris*, e  
   - cochlear

7. *cor*, cordis n  
   - heart

8. *cortex*, ĭcis m  
   - cortex

9. *durus*, a, um  
   - hard, solid

10. *encephālon*, i n  
    - brain

11. *fissūra*, ae f  
    - fissure, narrow slit

12. *gaster*, tris f  
    - stomach

13. *labīum*, i n  
    - lip

14. *mater*, tris f  
    - membrane of brain or spinal cord

15. *membrāna*, ae f  
    - membrane

16. *membranacēus*, a, um  
    - membranous

17. *os*, oris n  
    - mouth

18. *parietālis*, e  
    - parietal

19. *parĭes*, ētis m  
    - wall

20. *pharynx*, ýngis m  
    - pharynx

21. *pius*, a, um  
    - soft

22. *pulmo*, ōnis m  
    - lung

23. *pulmonālis*, e  
    - pulmonary

24. *spinōsus*, a, um  
    - spinous

25. *tympanīcus*, a, um  
    - tympanic

26. *trochanter*, ēris m  
    - trochanter

27. *vomer*, ěris m  
    - vomer
**Names of muscles:**

1. Muscūlus constrictor                          constrictor (muscle)
2. Muscūlus depressor                            depressor (muscle)
3. Muscūlus levātor                                elevator (muscle)
4. Muscūlus rotātor                                 rotator (muscle)
5. Muscūlus tensor                                  tensor (muscle)
LESSON 7

LATIN THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS. FEMININE GENDER

In this lesson you will:

• Learn the endings of the feminine third declension nouns.
• Learn exceptions to the rule of the feminine third declension nouns endings.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Endings of feminine third declension nouns.
II. Exceptions to the rule of the feminine third declension nouns endings.
III. Exercises.
IV. Vocabulary

I. ENDINGS OF FEMININE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

Most nouns ending by -io, -as, -is, -s, -x (imparisyllaba), -is (parisyllaba) are feminine, cf.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endings</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Genitive (with a part of the stem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. - as       - ātis</td>
<td>cavītas, cavītātis f - cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. - is        - ĭdis</td>
<td>pyrāmis, pyramīdis f - pyramid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(imparisyllaba)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. - is        - is</td>
<td>auris, aurīs f – ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(parisyllaba)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. - s         - tis</td>
<td>pars, partīs f - part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. - x         - cis</td>
<td>radīx, radīcīs f – root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- gis</td>
<td>menīnx, menīngīs f - menīnx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. - o         - ĭnis</td>
<td>cartilāgo, cartilāgīnis f – cartilage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- io           - įonis</td>
<td>articulaṭīo, articulaṭīōnis f – joint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II. EXCEPTIONS TO THE RULE OF THE FEMININE THIRD
DECLENSION NOUNS ENDINGS

The following nouns having feminine endings are **masculine** (according to 6 endings in the foregoing table):

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>atlas, ntis m</td>
<td>atlas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>pulvis, ēris m</td>
<td>powder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sanguis, īnis m</td>
<td>blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>axis, is m</td>
<td>axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>canālis, is m</td>
<td>canal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>unguis, is m</td>
<td>nail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>dens, dentis m</td>
<td>tooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>fornic, ĭcis m</td>
<td>arch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>larynx, ngis m</td>
<td>larynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pharynx, ngis m</td>
<td>pharynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>coccyx, ŭgis m</td>
<td>tailbone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>tendo, īnis m</td>
<td>sinew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>margo, īnis m</td>
<td>edge</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following nouns having feminine endings are **neuter**:

1. *pancrēas, ātis n* - pancreas

2. *vas, vasis n* - vessel

III. EXERCISES

1. **Translate into English:**

   cavītas medullāris, basis craniī externa, cartilāgo thyroidēa, cartilāgo alāris major, margo inferior pulmōnis sinistri, auris externa, bifurcatio trachēae, basis pyramīdis renālis, margo utēri dexter, axis bulbi externus, pancreas accessorium,
pars libera gingivae, cartilago septi nasi, cavitas oris propria, labyrinthus ossesus auris internae, terminatio nervi cutis, vas lymphaticum superficiäle, canalis palatïnus major, caput pancreatis, regio thorâcis posterior, sanguis venösus et arteriösus.

2. Make up grammatical agreement of adjectives with the given nouns:
1) cavitas (pleurâlis, e; articulâris, e; medullâris, e)
2) margo (anterior, ius; frontâlis, e; dexter, tra, trum)
3) auris (internus, a, um; externus, a, um; medius, a, um)
4) cartilâgo (costâlis, e; alâris, e; articulâris, e; major, jus)
5) pars (ossesus, a, um; laterâlis, e; anterior, ius; dexter, tra, trum)
6) vas (lymphatïcus, a, um; sanguinëus, a, um; capillâris, e)

3. Translate into Latin:
dura mater of brain, pyloric canal, fornix of stomach, canal of great stony nerve, angle of stomach, fornix of pharynx, ring-shaped part of fibrous vagina, sholder joint, capsule of pancreas, tympanic cavity of middle ear, greater palatine canal, cartilage of nasal septum, inferior constrictor of pharynx.

V. VOCABULARY

1. alâris, e
   alar
2. anulâris, e
   ring-shaped
3. abor, öris f
   abor
4. arteriösus, a, um
   arterial
5. articulaatio, önis f
   joint
6. auris, is f
   ear
7. bifurcatio, önis f
   bifurcation
8. capillâris, e
   capillary
9. carotïcus, a, um
   carotid
10. cartilāgo, ĭnis f cartilage
11. cavītas, ātis f cavity
12. coccyx, ýgis m coccyx, coccygeal bone
13. compositus, a, um complex
14. costālis, e costal
15. cutis, is f skin
16. dens, dentis m tooth
   • dens canīnus canine, cuspid tooth
   • dens incisīvus incisor tooth
   • dens molāris molar tooth
   • dens premolāris premolar tooth
   • dens decidūus milk tooth
   • dens sapientīae (dens serotīnus) wisdom tooth
17. fornix, ĭcis m fornx, arc
18. iliācus, a, um iliac
19. incisīvus, a, um incisive, cutting, sharp
20. labyrinthus, i m labyrinth
21. mandibulāris, e mandibular
22. masseterīcus, a, um masticatory, chewing
23. molāris, e molar
24. optīcus, a, um optic, visual
25. pancrēas, ātis n pancreas
26. pelvis, is f pelvis
27. pleurālis, e pleural
28. pylorīcus, a, um pyloric
29. regīo, ōnis f region
30. sanguinēus, a, um blood, sanguiferous
31. sanguis, ĭnis m blood
32. simplex, īcis simple
33. sternālis, e sternal
34. tuberosītas, ātis f tuberosity
35. vas, vasis n vessel
36. vita, ae f life
LESSON 8

LATIN THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS. NEUTER GENDER

In this lesson you will:

- Learn the endings of the neuter third declension nouns.
- Learn exceptions to the rule of the neuter third declension nouns endings.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Endings of neuter third declension nouns.
II. Exceptions to the rule of the neuter third declension nouns endings.
III. Exercises.
IV. Vocabulary

I. ENDINGS OF NEUTER THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

Most nouns ending by –ar, -e, -en, -ma, -ur, -us are neuter, cf.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endings</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Genitive (with a part of the stem)</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>- ar</td>
<td>- ātis</td>
<td>hepar, hepātis n - liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>- e</td>
<td>- tis</td>
<td>rete, retis n - network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>- en</td>
<td>- įnis</td>
<td>abdōmen, abdominis n - abdomen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>- ma</td>
<td>- ātis</td>
<td>zygōma, zygomātis n – cheek-bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>- ur</td>
<td>- ōris</td>
<td>femur, femōris n - thigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>- us</td>
<td>- ėris</td>
<td>glomus, glomēris n - glome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- ōris</td>
<td>pectus, pectōris n – chest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- uris</td>
<td>crus, cruris n - shank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>- ut</td>
<td>- ītis</td>
<td>caput, capītis n – head</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II. EXCEPTIONS TO THE RULE OF THE NEUTER THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS ENDINGS

The following nouns having neuter endings are **masculine**:

1. lien, liēnis m - **spleen**
2. ren, renis m – **kidney**

The neuter third declension nouns ending in **–ma** should be distinguished from feminine first declension nouns ending in **–a**:

**E.g.**: diaphragma, ātis n - **diaphragm**;

chiasma, ātis n - **chiasm**;

stroma, ātis n - **stroma**;

systēma, ātis n - **system**;

zygōma, ātis n – **cheek-bone**.

but

squama, ae f - **scales**;

struma, ae f – **crop**.

III. EXERCISES

1. **Make up grammatical agreement of the adjectives with the given nouns**:

1) forāmen (occipitālis,e; mentālis, e; incisīvus, a, um; mastoiděus, a, um; major, jus)

2) systēma (centrālis, e; nervōsus, a, um; lymphatĭcus, a, um)

3) caput (longus, a, um; transversus, a, um; laterālis, e; brevis, e)

4) ren (dexter, tra, trum; mobīlis, e; sinister, tra, trum; lobātus, a, um)

5) crus (sinister, tra, trum; laterālis, e; brevis, e; simplex, īcis; anterior, ius)

6) hepar (mobīlis, e; lobātus, a, um; major, jus)
2. Translate into Latin:

superficial lymphatic vessel, posterior nucleus of trapezoid body, internal carotid artery, base of heart, apex of heart, root of lung, cavity of uterus, renal pelvis, thyroid cartilage, pylorus part, left lobe of lung, ventricle of larynx, superior constrictor of larynx, capsule of pancreas, external oblique muscle of stomach, mucous membrane of mouth, cardiac impression of lung, body of mammary gland, spinal muscle of neck, the longest muscle of head, canal of neck of uterus, frontal region of face, external base of skull, wing of vomer, membranous wall of trachea.

V. VOCABULARY

1. abdōmen, īnis n abdomen
2. accessorīus, a, um additional
3. aortīcus, a, um aortic, aortal
4. appendix, īcis f process, appendix
5. cavernōsus, a, um cavernous
6. centrālis, e central
7. coccygēus, a, um coccygeal
8. crus, cruris n leg, crus
9. glomus, ēris n glome, glomus
10. hepar, ātis n liver
11. impressio, ōnis f impression
12. lien, ēnis m spleen
13. lobātus, a, um lobulose, lobulous, lobulated
14. longus, a, um long
15. mamma, ae f mammary gland
16. mentālis, e mental
17. mobīlis, e mobile
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Term</th>
<th>English Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nervōsus, a, um</td>
<td>nervous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obliquus, a, um</td>
<td>oblique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radix, īcis f</td>
<td>root, radix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ren, renis m</td>
<td>kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>renālis, e</td>
<td>renal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rotundus, a, um</td>
<td>round</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stroma, ātis n</td>
<td>stroma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>synchondrōsis, is f</td>
<td>synchondrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>systēma, ātis n</td>
<td>system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegmen, īnis n</td>
<td>roof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thymus, i m</td>
<td>thymus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 9

NOMINATIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

In this lesson you will:

• Learn how to form the plural forms of nouns in the anatomical terminology.
• Learn how to form the plural forms of adjectives in the anatomical terminology.
• Learn abbreviations used in the anatomical terminology.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Nouns and adjectives endings in Nominative plural.
II. Formation of Nominative plural forms.
III. Abbreviations used in the anatomical terminology.
IV. Exercises.
V. Vocabulary

I. NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES ENDINGS IN NOMINATIVE PLURAL

The Latin nouns have Nominative plural endings as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Declension</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endings</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>-a (-ia)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attention!!! – Remember one neuter noun of the 3rd declension which has the Nominative plural ending -ia: rete – retia (network – networks). Other neuter nouns of the 3rd declension, which have the Nominative plural ending –ia, are not used in the anatomical terminology.
The Latin adjectives have Nominative plural endings as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives of the 1st group + adjectives in the superlative degree</th>
<th>Adjectives of the 2nd group</th>
<th>Adjectives in the comparative degree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m, f</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>m, f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>-ia</td>
<td>-es</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attention!!! - All neuter nouns irrespective of their declension as well as all adjectives in the neuter form in Nominative plural end in –a (adjectives of the 2nd group in -ia).

II. FORMATION OF NOMINATIVE PLURAL FORMS

In order to form the Nominative plural forms you should:

1) determine:
   - declension and gender of a noun or
   - group and gender of an adjective;

2) find the stem and form the plural form by adding to the stem the appropriate Nominative plural ending of this declension and gender.

E.g.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Declension, gender, group and degree of comparison</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Nominative plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vena, ae f</td>
<td>1 declension, feminine</td>
<td>ven</td>
<td>ven - ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nervus, i m</td>
<td>2 declension, masculine</td>
<td>nerv</td>
<td>nerv - i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spatium, i n</td>
<td>2 declension, neuter</td>
<td>spati</td>
<td>spati - a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinus, us m</td>
<td>4 declension, masculine</td>
<td>sin</td>
<td>sin - us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cornu, us n</td>
<td>4 declension, neuter</td>
<td>corn</td>
<td>corn - ūa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facies, ēi f</td>
<td>5 declension, feminine</td>
<td>faci</td>
<td>faci - es</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives

| cavernōsus                        | I group, masculine                                 | cavernōs | cavernōs - i   |
### III. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular form</th>
<th>Plural form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. – arteria</td>
<td>Aa. - arteriae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. – bursa</td>
<td>Bb. - bursae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gl. - glandŭla</td>
<td>Gll. - glandŭlae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For. - forāmen</td>
<td>Forr. - foramĭna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lig. - ligamentum</td>
<td>Ligg. - ligamenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. - muscŭlus</td>
<td>Mm. - muscŭli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. - nervus</td>
<td>Nn. - nervi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R. - ramus</td>
<td>Rr. - rami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vag. - vagīna</td>
<td>Vagg. - vagīnae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. - vena</td>
<td>Vv. – venae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. EXERCISES

1. Determine the dictionary form of each word:
   alveŏli dentāles (dental alveoli), spatia interglobularia (interglobular spaces), valvūlæ venōsae (venous valvulae), nomīna anatomīca (anatomical names), juga alveolaria (alveolar eminences), venae intercostāles anteriōres (anterior intercostal venae), labia oris (lips of mouth), canalicūli dentāles (dental small canales), facies articulāres (articular surfaces), ductus sublinguāles minōres (minor sublingual ducts), vasa sinusoidēa liēnis (sinusoid vessels of spleen), crura ossea (bony crura), arteriae ciliāres posteriōres longae (long posterior ciliary arteries).

2. Translate into Latin. Make up Nominative plural forms:
   carotic (tuber, sulcus, canal), lymphatic (vessel, node, valve), incisive (canal, opening, fossa), articular (cavity, process, cartilage), nasal (concha, bone, opening), anterior (margin, surface, septum), palatine (tonsil, process), jugular (tubercle, incisure (slit), process), wing-shaped (canal, process, fossa), ethmoidal (crest, bone, foramen), occipital (region, lobe, opening), mammiform (process, incisure, opening), lower (wall, fissure, arch), transverse (process, lobe, ligament, artery), posterior (horn, nucleus, surface).

3. Determine the case, number and part of speech of each word in the terms:
   1) venae rectāles inferiōres
   2) incisūrae cartilagĭnis
   3) meātus acustīci
   4) rami cardiāci cervicāles inferiōres
   5) regiōnes membri inferiōris
   6) sutūrae cranii
   7) radīces spināles
   8) canāles palatīni minōres
   9) ductus sublinguāles minōres
   10) partes orbitāles ossis frontālis
   11) vasa sanguinea retīnae
   12) nomīna anatomīca
   13) plexus venōsi vertebāles interni
   14) arteriae ciliāres posteriōres
   15) spatium intercostāle
4. Make up Nominative plural of following nouns:

ala, ae f  
arteria, ae f  
digĭtus, i m  
septum, i n  
alveōlus, i m  
ligamentum, i n  
margo, īnis m  
forāmen, īnis n  
os, ossis n  
ductus, us m  
arcus, us m  
paries, ētis m  
fundus, i m  
facies, ēi f

5. Form Nominative plural of the following terms:

1) processus ciliāris  
2) arteria gastrĭca brevis  
3) nodus lymphaticus lumbālis  
4) glandŭla linguālis  
5) ganglion thoracīcum  
6) vena nasālis externa

V. VOCABULARY

1. alveolāris, e  
2. alveōlus, i m  
3. anatomīcus, a, um  
4. dentālis, e  
5. dorsālis, e  
6. foveōla, ae f  
7. gastrīcus, a, um  
8. intercostālis, e  
9. interglobulāris, e  
10. interlobulāris, e  
   alveolar  
   alveole  
   anatomical  
   dental  
   dorsal  
   foveola  
   gastric  
   intercostal  
   interglobular  
   interlobular
11. interspinōsus, a, um  
   interspinal
12. jugum, i n  
   eminence
13. nomen, ĭnis n  
   name
14. pectorālis, e  
   pectoral
15. retīna, ae f  
   retina
16. serrātus, a, um  
   serrate
17. sinusoidēus, a, um  
   sinusoid
18. spatīum, i n  
   space
19. spinālis, e  
   spinal
20. sublinguālis, e  
   sublingual
21. synoviālis, e  
   synovial
22. carotīcus, a, um  
   carotic
23. vas, vasis n  
   vessel
24. cartilāgo, ĭnis f  
   cartilage
25. rectālis, e  
   rectal
26. crus, cruris n  
   crus
27. lien, ēnis m  
   spleen
28. cardiācus, a, um  
   cardiac
In this lesson you will:

- Learn how to form the Genitive plural forms of nouns in the anatomical terminology.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Nouns and adjectives endings in Genitive plural.
II. Particularities of the Genitive plural formation in the 3rd declension.
III. Exercises.
IV. Vocabulary

I. NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES ENDINGS IN GENITIVE PLURAL

The Latin nouns have Genitive plural endings as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Declension</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Endings of Genitive plural</td>
<td>- ārum</td>
<td>- ōrum</td>
<td>- um, - ūum</td>
<td>- ūum</td>
<td>- ērum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E.g.: vena, ae f - venārum;
nervus, i m - nervōrum;
cornu, us n - cornūum;
facies, ei f - faciērum.

Attention!!! - Adjectives of the 1st group and adjectives in the superlative degree are declined on the pattern of the 1st and 2nd declensions (feminines – 1st declension, masculines and neuters – 2nd declension).

E.g.: longus, a, um - longōrum, ārum, ōrum
II. PARTICULARITIES OF THE GENITIVE PLURAL FORMATION IN THE 3RD DECLENSION.

The following nouns of the 3rd declension end by –um:

1) the so-called *imparisyllaba*, i.e. the nouns that have unequal number of syllables in Nominative and Genitive, which stem is terminated by one consonant:

E.g.: forāmen, ĭnis n - foramĭn-um;
      pulmo, ōnis m - pulmōn-um;
      pes, pedis m - ped-um.

2) adjectives in comparative degree:

E.g.: anterior, ius - anteriōr-um.

The following nouns of the 3rd declension end by –ium:

1) the so-called *imparisyllaba*, i.e. the nouns that have unequal number of syllables in Nominative and Genitive, which stem is terminated by two consonants:

E.g.: dens, dentis m - dent-ium;
      pars, partis f - part-ium;
      os, ossis n - oss-ium.

2) adjectives of the 2nd group:

E.g.: brevis, e - brev-ium;
      frontālis, e - frontal-ium;
      simplex, ĭcis – simplic-ium.

Remember also the Genitive plural forms of the following nouns:

- rete, is n – retium
- canālis, is m – canalium
Attention!!! - The noun of the 3rd declension - *vas, vasis n* (vessel) is declined in plural on the pattern of the 2nd declension: **Genitive plural - vasōrum.**

III. EXERCISES

1. *Determine the declension of each word, give the dictionary form:*

   - *capsulārum* faciērum
   - *angulōrum* digitōrum
   - *arteriārum* plexuum
   - *foramīnum* cavōrum
   - *ligamentōrum* gingivārum
   - *arcuum* processuum
   - *canalium* palpebrārum
   - *tendīnum* cingulōrum

2. *Translate into Latin. Give the dictionary form of each noun, make up Genitive plural:*

   - *incisura* trunk
   - *valve* node
   - *duct* shoulder blade
   - *back* tubercle
   - *canal* eye
   - *horn* layer
   - *neck* muscle
   - *palate*
3. Make up the Genitive plural forms of the following adjectives:

1) dexter, tra, trum 7) articulāris, e
2) inferior, ius 8) mucōsus, a, um
3) laterālis, e 9) thoracīcus, a, um
4) internus, a, um 10) temporālis, e
5) commūnis, e 11) superior, ius
6) latus, a, um 12) longissīmus, a, um

4. Make up the Genitive plural forms:

vas lymphatĭcum superficiāle;  
nervus craniālis;  
vena pulmonālis;  
cornu minus;  
processus transversus;  
concha nasālis;  
valvŭla semilunāris.

IV. VOCABULARY

1. articulatīo, ōnis f joint  
2. auriculāris, e auricular  
3. chiasma, ātis n chiasm  
4. craniālis, e cranial  
5. extensor, ōris m extensor  
6. fibulāris, e fibular  
7. flavus, a, um yellow  
8. flexor, ōris m flexor  
9. interalveolāris, e interalveolar  
10. interradiculāris, e interradicular
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Num.</th>
<th>Latin Term</th>
<th>English Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>linguālis, e</td>
<td>lingual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>massa, ae f</td>
<td>mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>medulla, ae f</td>
<td>medulla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>medulla ossīum</td>
<td>(bone) marrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>nodūlus, i m</td>
<td>nodulus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>papilla, ae f</td>
<td>papila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>peron(a)eus, a, um</td>
<td>fibular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>plica, ae f</td>
<td>fold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>retinaculum, i n</td>
<td>retinaculum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>ruber, bra, brum</td>
<td>red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>semilunāris, e</td>
<td>semilunar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>trigeminālis, e</td>
<td>trigeminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>trochleāris, e</td>
<td>trochlear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>regīo, ōnis f</td>
<td>region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>incisīvus, a, um</td>
<td>incisive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>radix, ōcis f</td>
<td>root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>sanguinēus, a, um</td>
<td>blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>ciliāris, e</td>
<td>ciliary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>tonsilla, ae f</td>
<td>tonsil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>parīes, ētis m</td>
<td>wall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 11

PREFIXES IN THE ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

In this lesson you will:

• Become familiar with the role of prefixion in the formation of anatomical and histological terms
• Learn the principal Latin and Greek prefixes used in the anatomical terminology

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

V. Role of prefixion in the formation of anatomical and histological terms
   VI. Latin and Greek prefixes used in the anatomical terminology
   VII. Exercises.
   VIII. Vocabulary

I. ROLE OF PREFIXION IN THE FORMATION OF ANATOMICAL AND HISTOLOGICAL TERMS

It is known that the body or organs of the body may be sectioned according to planes of reference. These include a midsagittal plane that runs vertically through a structure, dividing it into right and left halves; a sagittal plane that runs vertically through a structure, dividing it into right and left portions; a coronal (frontal) plane that runs vertically through a structure, dividing it into anterior (front) and posterior (back) portions; and a transverse (cross-sectional) plane that runs horizontally through a structure, dividing it into upper and lower portions.
In the anatomical terminology a great variety of terms with the spatial location meaning is used. The fundamental importance in this aspect have Latin and Greek prefixes as follows:

## II. LATIN AND GREEK PREFIXES USED IN THE ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefixes</th>
<th>Meaning of the prefixes</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>before/behind</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ante-</td>
<td>before, preceding</td>
<td><strong>antebrachium</strong> <em>(forarm)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-</td>
<td>before, ahead of</td>
<td><strong>presacrālis</strong> <em>(presacral)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-</td>
<td>after, behind</td>
<td><strong>postaortālis</strong> <em>(postaortal)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retro-</td>
<td>back, behind</td>
<td><strong>retrocavālis</strong> <em>(retrocaval)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>above/under</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supra-</td>
<td>above</td>
<td><strong>supraauriculāris</strong> <em>(supra-auricular)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infra-</td>
<td>under; below</td>
<td><strong>infraspinālis</strong> <em>(infraspinal)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epi-</td>
<td>on; upon; over</td>
<td><strong>epigastrīum</strong> <em>(epigastrium)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub-</td>
<td>under; below</td>
<td><strong>subarachnoidālis</strong> <em>(subarachnoid)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypo-</td>
<td>below; incomplete;</td>
<td><strong>hypochondrīum</strong> <em>(hypochondrium)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>deficient</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>inside/outside</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intra-</td>
<td>within</td>
<td><strong>intramusculāris</strong> <em>(intramuscular)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endo-</td>
<td>within</td>
<td><strong>endocervicālis</strong> <em>(endocervical)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extra-</td>
<td>outside of; beyond</td>
<td><strong>extracapsulāris</strong> <em>(extracapsular)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>between</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inter-</td>
<td>between</td>
<td><strong>intervertebrālis</strong> <em>(intervertebral)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meso-</td>
<td>middle</td>
<td><strong>mesogastrīum</strong> <em>(mesogastrium)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>to/from</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ad-</td>
<td>to; toward</td>
<td><strong>adductor</strong> <em>(adductor)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefix</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Example (Greek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab-</td>
<td>from; away from</td>
<td>abductor (abductor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Para-</td>
<td>beside; beyond; around</td>
<td>paraduodenalis (paraduodenal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peri-</td>
<td>surrounding (outer)</td>
<td>pericardium (pericardium)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syn-</td>
<td>together; joined</td>
<td>synarthrosis (synarthrosis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Com-(con-)</td>
<td>together</td>
<td>commissura (commissure)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### III. EXERCISES

1. **Make up new words using prefixes and translate into English:**

   a) extra-
      - cellularis, e
      - capsularis, e

   b) intra-
      - cranialis, e
      - glandularis, e

   c) infra-
      - orbitalis, e
      - patellaris, e

   d) supra-
      - clavicularis, e
      - scapularis, e

   e) para-
      - sternalis, e
      - vertebralis, e

   f) inter-
      - costalis, e
      - osseus, a, um

   g) pre- (prae)
      - centralis, e
      - axillaris, e

   h) retro-
      - mandibularis, e

   i) sub-
      - cutaneus, a, um
      - lingualis, e
2. Translate into English:
facies interlobāris, muscūlus infraspinātus, fossa infraclaviculāris, pars intracranīālis, margo interosseus, arteria suprascapulāris, muscūli suboccipitāles, septum intermusculāre cruris anterius, muscūlus infraspinātus, margo interosseus, ductus sublinguāles minōres, arteria suprarenālis media, membrāna intercostālis interna.

3. Translate into Latin:
interlobar artery, preoccipital notch, suprapleural membrane, submandibular gland, interclavicular ligament, intermandibular suture, intraglandular lymphatic node, supraorbital vein, common interosseal artery, external intercostal muscles, interosseal nerves of leg, fascia of forearm.

IV. VOCABULARY

1. antebrachīum, i n forearm
2. collaterālis, e collateral
3. epigastrīum, i n epigastrium
4. hypogastrīum, i n hypogastrium
5. infraclaviculāris, e infracloicular
6. infraorbitālis, e infraorbital
7. infraspinātus, a, um infraspinatus
8. intercostālis, e intercostal
9. interlōbāris, e interlobar
10. intermusculāris, e intermuscular
11. interossēus, a, um interosseal
12. interspinālis, e interspinal
13. intracranīālis, e intracranial
14. retromandibulāris, e retromandibular
15. subclavīus, a, um subclavicular
16. subcutanēus, a, um subcutaneous
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Latin phrase</th>
<th>English phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>sublinguālis, e</td>
<td>sublingual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>submandibulāris, e</td>
<td>submandibular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>suboccipitālis, e</td>
<td>suboccipital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>supraclaviculāris, e</td>
<td>supraclavicular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>suprarenālis, e</td>
<td>suprarenal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>suprascapulāris, e</td>
<td>suprascapularis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 12

SAMPLE FINAL TEST IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

In this lesson you will:

• become familiar with a Final Test sample

Final Test in Anatomical Terminology

V - 2

I. Translate into Latin in the dictionary form:

1. wing 6. articular
2. cord 7. gum
3. upper arm 8. lower
4. nervous node 9. palate
5. middle 10. widest

II. Make up grammatical agreement and put the terms into Genitive singular:

1. paries, ētis m 4. processus, us m
   inferior, ius  palatīnus, a, um

2. tubercŭlum, i n 5. arteria, ae f
   jugulāris, e  brevis, e

3. fossa, ae f 6. ganglion, i n
   pterygoidĕus, a, um  thoracīcus, a, um
III. Make up the Genitive singular and the Nominative and the Genitive plural forms:

1. ala major
2. lobus occipitālis
3. membrum inferius
4. muscūlus zygomaticūs
5. concha nasālis
6. forāmen ethmoidāle
In this lesson you will:

- Become familiar with the characteristic features of the Greek and Latin medical terms.
- Learn to divide the medical terms into their basic parts.
- Learn basic roots and suffixes used in the Greek and Latin medical terms.
- Use these component elements to form and understand medical terms.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Introduction to Greek and Latin medical terminology.
II. Roots and suffixes used in the Greek and Latin medical terms.
III. Exercises.

I. INTRODUCTION TO GREEK AND LATIN MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY

Although medical terms have been drawn from many languages, a large majority are from Greek and Latin.

The long and formidable sounding medical terms are a combination of words which describe parts of the body, a function, or a condition. The basic terms occur over and over again in various combinations. A knowledge of the meaning of the roots, prefixes, and suffixes enables the student to analyze the medical terms into component parts. This is of the greatest aid in learning to understand the vocabulary of medicine. Some names of diseases given by the ancients and
still used to-day are, in many instances, simply descriptions of the outstanding symptoms; for example, hydro-phobia—fear of water—for rabies.

1. It is estimated that about three-fourths of the English medical terminology is of **Greek origin**. The main reason for this is that the Greeks were the founders of rational medicine in the golden age of Greek civilization in the 5th Century B.C. The Hippocratic School and, later on, Galen (the Greek from Asia Minor who lived in Rome in the 2nd century A.D.) formulated the theories which dominated medicine up to the beginning of the 18th Century. The Hippocrates were the first to describe diseases based on observation, and the names given by them to many conditions are still used today, for example, arthritis, nephritis, pleuritis (pleurisy).

2. The second reason for the large number of Greek medical terms is that the Greek language lends itself easily to the building of compounds. When new terms were needed, with the rapid expansion of medical science during the last century, Greek words or Latin words with Greek endings were used to express the new ideas, conditions, or instruments. The new words follow the older models so closely that it is impossible to distinguish the two by their forms. Such recent words as appendicitis, creatinine, cystoscope, epinephrine, streptococcus, and many others do not appear different from the classical terms. The fact is that about one-half of our medical terminology is less than a century old.

3. The third reason for using the classical roots is that they form an international language, easily understood by anyone familiar with the subject matter.

1.

The terminology of the modern medicine is the most complicated terminological system of the modern science. The total amount of medical terms remains unknown, but its estimated amount exceeds one million terms. You realize that
it is impossible to learn one million words, even for an intelligent person, because we use in our native language only several thousands words. Our course will help you to understand and use about fifty thousand main medical terms. This course teaches you how medical terms are ‘built’ or ‘put together’ instead of just memorizing lots of medical words and their meanings. You will learn to recognize the meaning of a medical term by dividing the word into its three basic component parts: the prefix, root and suffix. By knowing the meanings of the prefixes, suffixes, and root words, you can easily figure out the meaning of a medical term.

For example, if you see a medical term containing the root word ‘cardi’ and the suffix ‘itis’, you know that the term has to do with an ‘inflamed’ (itis) ‘heart’ (cardi).

This technique of word building is a simple and straightforward way to learn medical terminology without long hours of memorizing the medical vocabulary.

- You will learn Latin and Greek terminological elements.
- You will be able to figure out unfamiliar words by recognizing their building blocks from which they are constructed.
- You will be able to construct many words correctly by learning to put these building blocks together in the proper way.
- You will be able to determine the meanings of thousands of words that you have never seen before and which are used in medicine.

2.

Greek and Latin medical terms can be broken down into one or more word parts. For simplicity in explanation, let's say that there are four possible word parts, and any given medical term may contain one, some, or all of these parts:

1. **root terminological elements** (a shorthand notation “root”)
2. **final terminological elements** (a shorthand notation “suffixes”)
3. **prefixes**
4. **combining vowels**

An example of a word with three of the above parts is the medical term **pericarditis**, which means *inflammation of the outer layer of the heart*.

Pericarditis can be divided into three parts:

- **peri-card-itis**

Once divided into its essential parts, pericarditis can be translated:

- the prefix **peri**- translates to *surrounding*,
- the root **-card**- translates to *heart*, and
- the suffix **-itis** translates to *inflammation*.

Hence, **pericarditis** is *an inflammation of the area surrounding the heart*, or an inflammation of the outer layer of the heart, anatomically known as the pericardium.

Medical terms always consist of at least one root, although they may contain more. The root of a word is that part which contains the essential meaning of the word. An example of this was seen above in the term **pericarditis**. The root of the word **-card** - refers to the heart, so any prefix or suffix added to the root (card) will only function to add to the specificity of that word. An example of this would be the prefix **brady**, which means *slow*. If "brady" is added to the root "card", the term **bradycard** - which roughly means *slow heart* - is created. Then, if the suffix **ia** - which means *abnormal state* - is added to "bradycard", the medical term **bradycardia** is formed. The translation of bradycardia (**brady-card-ia**) is *slow - heart - abnormal state*, or the abnormal state of a slow heart rate.

3. **Linking or Combining Vowels**: As was discussed above, a medical term must have at least one root, but may not have a prefix and/or a suffix. An example of this is the term **sternocleidomastoid**, which is a muscle that has attachments at
the sternum, the clavicle, and the mastoid. The term **sternocleidomastoid** can be divided into three parts (three roots, in this case): **stern - o - cleid - o - mastoid**. Notice that there are vowels between the three roots. These are **linking or combining vowels**, which serve to make a term easier to pronounce. The vowel used most of the time is **o**, but other vowels such as **i** and **a** are also used. Combining vowels are often used between roots and suffixes or roots and other roots, but they are NOT used between prefixes and roots.

### 4. LEARNING TO READ A MEDICAL TERM

When you look at a medical term and attempt to decipher its meaning you begin with the suffix, move to the prefix (if present) and then the root word.

For example: When trying to understand the word **pericarditis** you would identify **itis** (meaning inflammation), then **peri** (meaning around) and then **card** (meaning heart). Therefore, this word means inflammation around the heart.

Let’s try another one: for example: **leukocytopenia** - **penia** (meaning **decrease**), then **leuk/o** (meaning white) and finally **cyt/o** (meaning cell). Therefore, this word means a **decrease in white cells**.

### II. ROOTS AND SUFFIXES USED IN THE GREEK AND LATIN MEDICAL TERMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ROOTS</strong></th>
<th><strong>Greek and Latin roots</strong></th>
<th><strong>English word elements</strong></th>
<th><strong>Meaning</strong></th>
<th><strong>Examples of medical terms</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>angi-; vas-</td>
<td>angi-</td>
<td>blood vessel</td>
<td>angiogramma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bio-; vit-</td>
<td>bio-</td>
<td>life</td>
<td>biologia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardi-; (-cardia)</td>
<td>cardi-</td>
<td>heart</td>
<td>cardiologia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyt-; (-cytus)</td>
<td>cyt-; -cyte</td>
<td>cell</td>
<td>adenocytus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyst-</td>
<td>cyst-</td>
<td>urinary bladder; sac of fluid</td>
<td>cystectomy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SUFFIXES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin suffixes</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-graphia</td>
<td>-graphy</td>
<td>recording; X-ray examination</td>
<td>angiographia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gramma</td>
<td>-gram</td>
<td>record; X-ray film</td>
<td>angiogramma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ectomia</td>
<td>-ectomy</td>
<td>removal; resection; to cut out</td>
<td>cystectomia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-logia</td>
<td>-logy</td>
<td>science; study</td>
<td>biologia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pathia</td>
<td>-pathy</td>
<td>any disease; disease process</td>
<td>enteropathia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tomia</td>
<td>-tomy</td>
<td>cutting; incision; section</td>
<td>gastrotomia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-terapia</td>
<td>-therapy</td>
<td>treatment</td>
<td>physiotherapia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### III. EXERCISES

1. **Build up clinical terms with the given roots and suffixes, explain their meaning:**

   E.g.: When you join the root *gastr(o)*- with the suffix *–pathia* you get the term *gastropathia* which means “disease process of the stomach”.

   - cardi(o)- (-graphia; -gramma; -pathia; -logia);
2. **Explain the meaning of the following terms:**

1) gastrectomia  
   gastrotomia

2) angiogramma  
   angiologia  
   angiopathia  
   angiographia  
   angiocardiographia

3) keratectomia  
   keratotomia

4) cystectomia  
   cystogramma  
   cystographia  
   cystotomia

5) cytologia  
   cytomgramma

6) colpotomia  
   enteropathia

3. **Give the Greek & Latin variants and explain the meaning of the following terms:**

angiogram; cholecystotomy; gastrectomy; colpotomy; encephalogram; enteropathy; cytology; cardiogram; mastopathy; angiology; keratectomy; biology; gastrotomy; cholecystectomy; cytogram; mastectomy

4. **Give the Latin spelling of the terms; explain their meaning:**

biology; cystography; angiopathy; keratectomy; gastrotomy; colpotomy; enteropathy; mammogram; encephalography; cytogram; cystectomy; cardiology; cholecystogram; keratectomy

5. **Form the Greek & Latin clinical terms according to the meaning:**

- disease of vessels;
• science of cells;
• removal of stomach;
• science of natural vital processes in the human body;
• disease of small intestine;
• X-ray examination of heart;
• X-ray film of brain;
• X-ray examination of urinary bladder;
• removal of cornea;
• cutting of vagina;
• X-ray film of gallbladder;
• X-ray film of heart;
• science of life;
• disease of breast;
• science of blood vessels.
LESSON 2

In this lesson you will:

- Learn new basic roots and suffixes used in the Greek and Latin medical terms.
- Use these component elements to form and understand medical terms.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Roots and suffixes used in the Greek and Latin medical terms.

II. Exercises.

I. ROOTS AND SUFFIXES USED IN THE GREEK AND LATIN MEDICAL TERMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roots</th>
<th>Greek and Latin roots</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cheil-; (-cheilia)</td>
<td>cheil- (-cheilia)</td>
<td>lip</td>
<td>cheilosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derm-; dermat-; (-dermia)</td>
<td>dermat-; dermat-; -dermia</td>
<td>skin</td>
<td>dermatologia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyster-; metr-</td>
<td>hyster-</td>
<td>uterus</td>
<td>hysterotomia metrotomia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephr-</td>
<td>nephr-</td>
<td>kidney</td>
<td>nephropexia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oste-</td>
<td>oste-</td>
<td>bone</td>
<td>osteologia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proct-</td>
<td>proct-</td>
<td>anus and rectum</td>
<td>proctectomy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyel-</td>
<td>pyel-</td>
<td>renal pelvis</td>
<td>pyelography</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhin-</td>
<td>rhin-</td>
<td>nose</td>
<td>rhinopathy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spondyl-</td>
<td>spondyl-</td>
<td>vertebrae; backbone</td>
<td>spondylosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomat-</td>
<td>stomat-</td>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>stomatitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SUFFIXES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin suffixes</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-genēsis</td>
<td>-genesis</td>
<td>origin; cause</td>
<td>pathogenēsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gēnus, a, um</td>
<td>-genic; -genous</td>
<td>developing from inner state; to be the result of</td>
<td>gastrogēnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ītis</td>
<td>-itis</td>
<td>inflammation</td>
<td>dermatītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōma</td>
<td>-oma</td>
<td>tumour; swelling</td>
<td>angiōma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōsis</td>
<td>-osis</td>
<td>abnormal condition; disease</td>
<td>keratōsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pexia</td>
<td>-pexy</td>
<td>fixation</td>
<td>enteropexia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-scopia</td>
<td>-scopy</td>
<td>internal examination</td>
<td>gastroscopia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PREFIXES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin prefixes</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>endo-</td>
<td>endo-</td>
<td>within; in</td>
<td>endometrītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>para-</td>
<td>para-</td>
<td>beside; near</td>
<td>parametrītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peri-</td>
<td>peri-</td>
<td>surrounding (outer)</td>
<td>perinephrītis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### II. EXERCISES

1. **Build up clinical terms with the given roots and suffixes, explain their meaning:**
   - -(o)scopia (gastr-; cholecyst-; colp-; cyst-; stomat-; rhin-; cyt-; proct-);
   - -(o)pexia (hyster-; nephr-; proct-; enter-);
   - -(o)pathia (rhin-; spondyl-; nephr-; oste-; cholecyst-; encephal-; angi-; mast-; cardi-);
   - -itis (colp-; nephr-; proct-; cholecyst-; kerat-; pyel-; dermat-; cheil-; stomat-; rhin-; encephal-; mast-; spondyl-);
   - para- (-metritis; -nephritis; -proctitis);
   - endo- (-genus; -scopia; -metritis; -cardium; -carditis).
2. Explain the meaning of the following terms:

1) angiocholecystitis
   angioma
   angiomatosis
   angiopathia
   angiitis
   angiologia

2) nephritis
   nephrectomia
   nephropathia
   nephroma
   nephropexia
   nephropylitis
   nephrosis
   nephrotemia

3) pyelographia
   pyelocystitis
   pyelitis
   pyelonephritis
   pyelotomia

4) dermatitis
   dermatologia
   dermatoma
   dermatosis

3. Give the Greek & Latin variants and explain the meaning of the following terms:

endoscopy; osteotomy; endometritis; endocardium; endocarditis; metritis;
metropathy; dermatology; spondylotomy; nephrogenic; nephropathy;
osteocytoma; nephropexy; pyelography; proctoscopy; gastroscopy; enteropexy;
spondylopathy; encephalopathy; proctectomy; keratosis; osteology; keratoma;
nephroma; osteopathology; spondilitis.

4. Give the Latin spelling of the terms; explain their meaning:

nephrology; endogenous; nephropyelography; colposcopy; metrography;
angiitis; angiocardiogram; spondylisis; osteopathy; stomatology; stomatography;
cholecystopexy; osteoma; osteogenesis; gastrogenic; dermatology; rhinopathy; perinephritis; endometritis; gastrectomy; nephrogram; mastectomy; osteocytes; spondylogram; dermatoscopy.

5. Form the Greek & Latin clinical terms according to the meaning:

- inflammation of the tissue surrounding the heart
- internal examination of nose
- fixation of kidney
- removal of bone
- inflammation of uterus mucous
- science of skin
- cutting of uterus
- removal of anus and rectum
- inflammation of renal pelvis and urinary bladder
- disease of bones
- abnormal condition of skin
- inflammation of lips
- fixation of anus and rectum
- removal of kidney
- disease of uterus
- inflammation of vertebrae
- internal examination of oral cavity
- inflammation of nose
- tumour of kidney
**LESSON 3**

*In this lesson you will:*

- Learn new basic roots and suffixes used in the Greek and Latin medical terms.
- Use these component elements to form and understand medical terms.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Roots and suffixes used in the Greek and Latin medical terms.
   II. Exercises.

### I. ROOTS AND SUFFIXES USED IN THE GREEK AND LATIN MEDICAL TERMS

#### ROOTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin roots</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>odont-; (-odontia); (-denticia)</td>
<td>odont-; -odontia; -denticia</td>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>odontalgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ophthalm-; -ophthalmia</td>
<td>ophthalm-; -ophthalmy</td>
<td>eye</td>
<td>ophthalmopathia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ot-</td>
<td>ot-</td>
<td>ear</td>
<td>otoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paed-; (-paedia)</td>
<td>ped-</td>
<td>child; children</td>
<td>paediatria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phleb-</td>
<td>phleb-</td>
<td>vein</td>
<td>phlebotomia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phthisi-</td>
<td>phthisi-</td>
<td>tuberculosis</td>
<td>phthisiatria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psych-</td>
<td>psych-</td>
<td>mind</td>
<td>psychologia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trich-; (-trichia)</td>
<td>trich-</td>
<td>hair</td>
<td>trichopathia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**SUFFIXES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin suffixes</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-alg; -algia</td>
<td>-algia</td>
<td>pain</td>
<td>trichalgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iätter; -iatria</td>
<td>-iatrist;</td>
<td>physician;</td>
<td>paediater;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-iatrician</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-iatriy;</td>
<td>science about treatment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-iatria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-plasia</td>
<td>-plasia</td>
<td>formation; development</td>
<td>hyperplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rrhagia</td>
<td>-rrhagia</td>
<td>bleeding</td>
<td>rhinorrhagia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rrhaphia</td>
<td>-rrhaphy</td>
<td>suturing</td>
<td>metrorrhaphia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rrhoea</td>
<td>-rrhea</td>
<td>discharge; elimination</td>
<td>rhinorrhoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-trophia</td>
<td>-trophy</td>
<td>nourishment; development</td>
<td>dystrophia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PREFIXES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin prefixes</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a-; an-</td>
<td>a-; an-</td>
<td>no; not; without</td>
<td>aplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dys-</td>
<td>dys-</td>
<td>malfunction; difficulty</td>
<td>dysplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyper-</td>
<td>hyper-</td>
<td>above; excessive</td>
<td>hyperplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypo-</td>
<td>hypo-</td>
<td>below; deficient</td>
<td>hypoplasia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**II. EXERCISES**

1. **Build up clinical terms with the given roots and suffixes, explain their meaning:**
   - hyper- (-keratosis; -mastia; -nephroma; -plasia; -trichosis; -trophia);
   - hypo- (-plasia; -trophia; -gastrium; -thyreosis);
   - dys- (-enteria; -trophia; -plasia; -keratosis);
   - a-; an- (-trophia; -plasia; -ophthalmia; -trichia; -dentia; -cheilia);
1. -(o)rrhagia (ot-; metr-; proct-; gastr-; enter-; stomat-; ophthalm-; odont-; hyster-; cheil-; rhin-);
2. trich(o)- (-pathia; -rrhoea; -osis; -algia);
3. ot(o)- (-genus; -rrhagia; -scopia; -itis);
4. phleb(o)- (-gramma; -graphia; -itis; -tomia; -ectomia; -rraphia);
5. rhin(o)- (-scopia; -rrhagia; -rrhoea; -pathia; -itis; -algia).

2. Explain the meaning of the following terms:

1) psychologia
   psychiatria
   psychiater
   psychogenus
   psychopathia
   psychotherapia

2) phlebotomia
   phlebographia
   phlebogramma
   phlebitis

3) trichopathia
   trichalgia
   trichorrhoea
   trichosis
   atrichia

4) ophthalmologia
   ophthalmorrhagia
   endophthalmitis
   ophthalmoscopina
   anophthalmia

5) proctalgia
   odontalgia
   trichalgia
   gastralgia

6) otorrhoea
   otorrhagia
   otoscopy
   otogenus
   otitis
   otalgia

3. Give the Greek & Latin variants and explain the meaning of the following terms:

trichopathy; phlebotomy; pediatrician; otogenic; ophthalmology; hypoplasia; otoscopy; dystrophy; hyperkeratosis; phlebography; adentia; enteropexia; proctalgia; aplasia; psychogenic; atrophy; cheilorragia; rhinoscopy; phlebitis; trichalgia; psychiatry; otitis; enterorrhaphy; otorrhoea; endophthalmitis; odontalgia; dysplasia; hysterorrhaphy; otorrhagia; rhinorrhea; phlebogram; stomatitis; psychopathy; metrography; proctorrhagia; hypotrophy; gastrorrhagia; acheilia; atrichia; gastritis; enterorrhagia.
4. **Give the Latin spelling of the terms; explain their meaning:**

phlebogram; psychotherapy; phlebotomy; odontoma; dystrophy; psychiatry; otogenic; hypertrophy; enterorrhaphy; phlebography; metrography; rhinorrhea; psychogenic; psychopathy; trichorrhea; otoscopy; angiocardiography; enteropathy; hypotrophy; ophthalmoscopy; encephalogram; cholecystotomy; mastopathy; trichopathy; nephropathy; phthisiatrist; stomatoscopy; dysentery.

5. **Form the Greek & Latin clinical terms according to the meaning:**

- study of tuberculosis
- incomplete development of an organ or tissue
- bleeding from ear
- toothache (pain)
- lack of hair
- inflammation of vein
- physician who treats children
- abnormal development
- science about treatment of mental disorders
- study of eye disorders
- bleeding from tooth
- decrease in size or wasting away of a cell, tissue, organ or part
- internal examination of ear
- disease of hair
- abnormal increase of breast in size
- cutting of vein
- developing from tooth


**LESSON 4**

*In this lesson you will:*

- Learn new basic roots and suffixes used in the Greek and Latin medical terms.
- Use these component elements to form and understand medical terms.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

1. Roots and suffixes used in the Greek and Latin medical terms.
2. Exercises.

### I. ROOTS AND SUFFIXES USED IN THE GREEK AND LATIN MEDICAL TERMS

#### ROOTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin roots</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dactyl-; -dactylia</td>
<td>dactyl-; -dactyly</td>
<td>fingers or toes</td>
<td>dactylalgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gloss-; -glossia</td>
<td>gloss-; -glossia</td>
<td>tongue</td>
<td>glossalgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gluc-; (glucos-); glyk-</td>
<td>gluc-; (glucos-); glyce-</td>
<td>sugar</td>
<td>glykaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haem-; haemat-; -aemia</td>
<td>hem-; hemat-; -(a)emia</td>
<td>blood</td>
<td>haematologia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heter-</td>
<td>heter-</td>
<td>other; (opposite of homo) different kind, type</td>
<td>heterogenus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homo-</td>
<td>homo-</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>homogenus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macr-</td>
<td>macr-</td>
<td>large</td>
<td>macrocephalia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micr-</td>
<td>micr-</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>microgastria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neur-</td>
<td>neur-</td>
<td>nerve</td>
<td>neurologia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUFFIXES</td>
<td>Greek and Latin suffixes</td>
<td>English word elements</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-megalia</td>
<td>-megaly</td>
<td>enlargement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-opia;</td>
<td>-opia; -opsia</td>
<td>vision; view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-thermia</td>
<td>-thermia</td>
<td>heat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. EXERCISES

1. **Build up clinical terms with the given roots and suffixes, explain their meaning:**
   - (o)megalia (cardi-; dactyl-; splen-; mast-);
   - micr(o)- (-scopia; -glossia; -mastia; -gastria; -splenia; -cephalia; -ophthalmia);
   - poly- (-uria; -vitaminosis; -neuritis);
   - thermia (hyper-; hypo-);
   - neur(o)- (-logia; -rrhaphia; -pathia; -osis; -tomia; -oma; -genus; -pathologia; -itis; -algia; -ectomia);
   - haem(o)-; haemat(o)- (-uria; -logia; -angioma; -oma; -rrhagia; -gramma; -thorax; -genus).
2. Explain the meaning of the following terms:

1) haematogenus
   haematoma
   haematologia
   haemothorax
   haemogramma
   haemopericardium
   haemotherapia
   haemangioma

2) neuralgia
   neurectomia
   neurologia
   neuropathia
   neurorrhaphia
   neuropathologia
   neurosis
   neuroma

3) splenectomy
   splenitis
   splenotomy
   splenorrhagia
   splenopexia
   microsplena

4) pneumothorax
   pneumohaemorrhagia
   pneumonectomy
   pneumohydrothorax
   pneumonia
   pneumotomia
   pneumatosis

5) polytrichia
   polyuria
   polydactyly
   polycytaemia
   polyneuritis
   polycystosis

6) glossalgia
   glossitis
   glossopathia
   glossorrhagia
   glossoplastica

3. Give the Greek & Latin variants and explain the meaning of the following terms:

- oliguria; megalosplenia; glycemia; glossalgia; dystrophy; nephropathy;
- oligodentia; microsplena; neurotomy; dysphonia; pneumatosis; dactylomegalgy;
- hypothermia; pneumonia; dysopia; polyuria; hematoma; uremia;
- pneumonectomy; neuropathy; microglossia; hematogenous; gastrogenous;
- endogenous; gastrectomy; aphonia; dermatology; spondylopathy.

4. Give the Latin spelling of the terms; explain their meaning:

- hypothermia; hypovitaminosis; uremia; microsplenia; oligocytaemia; glucosuria;
- hyperthermia; hemangioma; dysopia; hematogenic; glycemia; dactylalgia;
- hypoglossus; biopsia; osteodystrophy; polytrichia; phagocytosis; dysphagia;
dactylomegaly; aphagia; urogenous; pneumopericardium; pneumothorax; polydactyilia.

5. Form the Greek & Latin clinical terms according to the meaning:

- disturbance of period discharge (menses)
- small spleen
- excessive discharge of urine
- mass of coagulated blood
- removal of nerve
- incomplete development of an organ or tissue
- disease of mind
- abnormal presence of glucose (sugar) in the urine
- disturbance of voice formation
- bleeding from ear
- cutting of lung
- retention of urine substances in the blood
- elevation of temperature
- tumour of spleen
- deficiency of blood in quality or quantity
- medical speciality related to the brain and nervous system
- small stomach
- lack of fingers or toes
- bleeding from eye
- abnormal thickening of cornea
- inflammation of the lung with consolidation and drainage
• examination by microscope
• excessive enlargement of lips
• difficult or painful urination
• fixation of small intestine
• nasal bleeding
• hairy tongue
• difficulty in swallowing
• congenitally small skull and small amount of brain tissue
• uterine bleeding
In this lesson you will:

- Learn new basic roots and suffixes used in the Greek and Latin medical terms.
- Use these component elements to form and understand medical terms.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Roots and suffixes used in the Greek and Latin medical terms.
II. Exercises.

I. ROOTS AND SUFFIXES USED IN THE GREEK AND LATIN MEDICAL TERMS

ROOTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin roots</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aden-</td>
<td>aden-</td>
<td>gland</td>
<td>adenōma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arthr-</td>
<td>arthr-</td>
<td>joint</td>
<td>arthropathia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cephal-; -cephalia</td>
<td>cephal-; -cephaly</td>
<td>head</td>
<td>cephalalgia; hydrocephalia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chondr-</td>
<td>chondr-</td>
<td>cartilage</td>
<td>chondrogenēsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyan-</td>
<td>cyan-</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>cyanuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dacryocyst-</td>
<td>dacryocyst-</td>
<td>tear sac; lacrimal sac</td>
<td>dacryocystītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erythr-</td>
<td>erythr-</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>erythrocytus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leuc-</td>
<td>leuc-; leuk-</td>
<td>white</td>
<td>leucocytus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my-; myos-</td>
<td>my-; myos-</td>
<td>muscle</td>
<td>myalgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myel-</td>
<td>myel-</td>
<td>spinal cord; bone marrow</td>
<td>myelītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orth-</td>
<td>orth-</td>
<td>straight</td>
<td>orthopaedia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SUFFIXES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin suffixes</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-kinesia</td>
<td>-kinesia</td>
<td>movement</td>
<td>oligokinesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-stōma; -stomia</td>
<td>-stoma; -stomia</td>
<td>fistula; creation of an artificial opening</td>
<td>gastrostōma; enterostomia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PREFIXES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin prefixes</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pan-</td>
<td>pan-</td>
<td>all; total</td>
<td>panalgia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## II. EXERCISES

1. **Build up clinical terms with the given roots and suffixes, explain their meaning:**

- py(o)- (-dermia; -genus; -metra; -nephrosis; -ophthalmia; -rrhoea; -thorax; -pneumothorax; -pericardium);
- myel(o)- (-cytus; -itis; -genus; -gramma; -graphia; -oma; -osis);
- oste(o)- (-arthropathia; -arthrotomia; -oma; -itis; -arthritis; -chondritis; -genus; -dystrophia; -logia; -myelitis; -pathia; -tomia; -ectomia);
- tox-; toxic(o)- (-aemia; -genus; -logia; -osis; -dermia; -mania);
- leuc(o)- (-cytus; -cytosis; -derma; -oma; -gramma);
- my(o)-; myos- (-itis; -logia; -oma; -algia; -cardium; -cardiodystrophia; -cardiopathia; -genus; -opia; -tomia);
- ot(o)- (-genus; -rrhagia; -scopia; -itis);
- phleb(o)- (-gramma; -graphia; -itis; -tomia; -ectomia; -rrhaphia);
- rhin(o)- (-scopia; -rrhagia; -rrhoea; -pathia; -itis; -algia).
2. Explain the meaning of the following terms:

1) cyanosis  
   cyanuria  
   cyanodermia  
   acrocyanosis  
   cyanopsia  

2) adenitis  
   lymphadenitis  
   adenoma  
   adenomyoma  
   adenopathia  

3) panalgia  
   panarthritis  
   pancarditis  
   panophthalmitis  
   panotitis  
   panhysterectomy  

4) arthritis  
   arthralgia  
   arthrosis  
   arthropathia  
   arthrotomia  
   polyarthritis  
   arthroplastica  
   haemarthrosis  

5) oligokinesia  
   dyskinesia  
   kinesitherapia  
   kinetosis  

6) cephalalgia  
   cephalhaematoma  
   cephalotomia  
   hydrocephalia  

3. Give the Greek & Latin variants and explain the meaning of the following terms:

microglossia; cheilorrhagia; arthropathy; cyanuria; dacryocystectomy; leucocyte; pyodermia; panarthritis; otopyorrhoea; polyarthritis; toxicology; panhysterectomy; myopia; orthopedics; oligokinesia; erythrodermia; dysphagia; myalgia; psychiatrist; encephalogram; myelemia; leucogram; pyonephrosis; pulmonectomy; chondrotomy; dacryocystogram; orthodontist; erythrocyturia; chondrogenic; adenotomy; osteomyelitis; otoneurology; arthralgia; oligodactylia; parodontopathy; periostitis; rhinoscopy; proctalgia; microphonia.

4. Give the Latin spelling of the terms; explain their meaning:

myelopathy; myometritis; periosteoma; periphlebitis; polyadenitis; pyogenic; pyonephrosis; oligotrophy; chondropathy; chondrotomy; cheilorrhaphy; cephalomegalgy; cephalothoracic; polydactyly; pyuria; microgastria;
encephalography; gastroenterostomy; gastrocolostomy; arthrochondritis; arthroophthalmopathy; pyodermia; toxicogenic; erythrokeratodermia; nephropyelostomy; stomatoscopy; dacrocytophyrrhea; myelography; dysphagia; proctostoma; esophagostomy; rhinorrhea.

5. **Form the Greek & Latin clinical terms according to the meaning:**

- creation of an artificial opening of the stomach
- disease of cartilages
- inflammation of brain and spinal cord
- purulent inflammation of the kidney
- accumulation of harmful substances in the blood
- pain in the muscles
- developing from bone marrow
- any disease of joints
- increased count of white blood cells in the blood
- red blood cell
- blue coloration of the skin caused by the deficiency of oxygen and the excess of carbon dioxide in the blood
- benign tumour from cartilaginous tissue
- accumulation of fluid in the skull (water in the brain)
- head pain (headache)
- inflammation of lymph nodes
- removal of tear sac
- widespread, general inflammation of the heart
- disturbance of movement
• accumulation of pus in the pleural cavity

• study of the correction of the musculoskeletal system deformities

• producing toxin

• the middle and thickest layer of the heart wall

• accumulation of blood in the joint cavity

• appearance of white spots on the skin

• skin inflammation with reddening, itching and desquamation

• blue coloration of the distal parts

• disturbance of cartilage nutrition

• glandular cell
LESSON 6

In this lesson you will:

- Learn new basic roots and suffixes used in the Greek and Latin medical terms.
- Use these component elements to form and understand medical terms.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Roots and suffixes used in the Greek and Latin medical terms.

II. Exercises.

I. ROOTS AND SUFFIXES USED IN THE GREEK AND LATIN MEDICAL TERMS

### ROOTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin roots</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aesthesi-; -aesthesia</td>
<td>esthesi-; -esthesia</td>
<td>feeling; nervous sensation</td>
<td>anaesthesiologia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brady-</td>
<td>brady-</td>
<td>slow</td>
<td>bradycardia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gynaec-</td>
<td>gynec-</td>
<td>woman; female</td>
<td>gynaecologia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hist-</td>
<td>hist-</td>
<td>tissue</td>
<td>histologia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydr-</td>
<td>hydr-</td>
<td>water</td>
<td>hydrophobia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lip-</td>
<td>lip-</td>
<td>fat; lipid</td>
<td>lipōma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lith-; -lithus</td>
<td>-lith</td>
<td>stone; calculus</td>
<td>phlebolithus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melan-</td>
<td>melan-</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>melanuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onc-</td>
<td>onc-</td>
<td>tumour</td>
<td>oncologia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyr-</td>
<td>pyr-</td>
<td>fever; heat</td>
<td>pyrotherapia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tachy-</td>
<td>tachy-</td>
<td>fast</td>
<td>tachycardia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUFFIXES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin suffixes</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-penia</td>
<td>-penia</td>
<td>decreased number (in blood)</td>
<td>leucocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pexia</td>
<td>-pexy</td>
<td>fixation</td>
<td>nephropexia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phobia</td>
<td>-phobia</td>
<td>fear</td>
<td>hydrophobia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-plegia</td>
<td>-plegia</td>
<td>paralysis; palsy</td>
<td>diplegia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PREFIXES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek and Latin prefixes</th>
<th>English word elements</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples of medical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bi-; di-;</td>
<td>bi-; di-;</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>didactyilia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mono-</td>
<td>mono-</td>
<td>one; single</td>
<td>monophobia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. EXERCISES

1. **Build up clinical terms with the given roots and suffixes, explain their meaning:**
   - tachy- (-cardia; -kinesia; -arrhythmia);
   - hydr(o)- (-therapia; -phobia; -thorax; -rrhoea; -nephrosis; -cephalia; -metra; -myelia);
   - pyr(o)- (-mania; -therapia; -phobia; -genus);
   - -(o)phobia (hydr-; gynaec-; toxic-; mono-);
   - di- (-dactylia; -plegia; -cheilia);
   - -(o)pexia (nephr-; metr-; proct-; cyst-; col-);
   - -(o)plegia (cyst-; ophthalm-; di-; mono-; cardiomyo-; gloss-);
   - -(o)lithus (enter-; phleb-; ur-; rhin-; hepat-; nephr-).
2. **Explain the meaning of the following terms:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Terms</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>melanuria</td>
<td>Melanuria is the presence of melanin in urine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melanodermia</td>
<td>Melanodermia is the condition of having melanin in the skin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melanoma</td>
<td>Melanoma is a type of skin cancer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>histotherapia</td>
<td>Histotherapia is the treatment of diseases using tissues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>histologia</td>
<td>Histologia is the study of tissues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>histopathologia</td>
<td>Histopathologia is the study of diseases affecting tissues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bradyglossia</td>
<td>Bradyglossia is slow speech.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bradyarrhythmia</td>
<td>Bradyarrhythmia is a slow heart rate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bradycardia</td>
<td>Bradycardia is a slow heart rate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bradyaesthesia</td>
<td>Bradyaesthesia is slow sensation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bradykinesia</td>
<td>Bradykinesia is slow movement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bradyphagia</td>
<td>Bradyphagia is slow eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyrotherapia</td>
<td>Pyrotherapia is the treatment of diseases using heat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyrophobia</td>
<td>Pyrophobia is an intense fear of fire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyrogenus</td>
<td>Pyrogenus is a substance that causes fever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrarthrosis</td>
<td>Hydrarthrosis is a condition where joint fluid accumulates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrothorax</td>
<td>Hydrothorax is a condition where fluid accumulates in the chest cavity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrophobia</td>
<td>Hydrophobia is a fear of water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrotherapia</td>
<td>Hydrotherapia is the treatment of diseases using heat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydraemia</td>
<td>Hydraemia is the presence of excessive fluid in the blood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrocephalia</td>
<td>Hydrocephalia is a condition where fluid accumulates in the skull.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrometra</td>
<td>Hydrometra is a condition where fluid accumulates in the uterus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydroperitoneum</td>
<td>Hydroperitoneum is a condition where fluid accumulates in the peritoneal cavity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydropneumothorax</td>
<td>Hydropneumothorax is a condition where fluid and air accumulate in the chest cavity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lipaemia</td>
<td>Lipaemia is the presence of excessive fat in the blood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lipoma</td>
<td>Lipoma is a benign tumor of fat cells.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lipuria</td>
<td>Lipuria is the presence of excessive fat in urine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lipodystrophia</td>
<td>Lipodystrophia is a condition of fat deficiency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lipofibroma</td>
<td>Lipofibroma is a benign tumor of fibrous tissue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lipogenus</td>
<td>Lipogenus is a substance that contains fat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Give the Greek & Latin variants and explain the meaning of the following terms:**

- histology; anesthesia; gynecophobia; erythropenia; melanosis; bradycardia; hypogastrium; hypertrophy; hydrology; pyrogenic; pyuria; erythema; monodactyly; bilateral; esthesiology; oncotomy; gynecopathy; lipemia; diplegia; erythrocytura; enterolith; nephrolithiasis; histoma; oncosis; chondrodystrophy; lipatrophy; gastroduodenostomy; otorrhagia; enteropexy; bradykinesia; monophobia; pyelotomy; lipopenia; toxicophobia; myorrhaphy; myogenic; myelogram; lipofibroma; periodontium; periostitis; oncocytoma; cystopyelogram.

4. **Give the Latin spelling of the terms; explain their meaning:**

- hydrophthalmos; mammography; cancerophobia; glossoplegia; rhinolith; glycemias; hydrometra; cytopenia; anesthesiology; hydrocholecystis;
angiography; glossorrhagia; colpopexy; phlebolith; melanodermia; monocytopenia; monomyoplegia; nephromegaly; mononeuritis; gastropexy; dicheilia; dysenteria; lipodystrophy; colostomy; cholelithiasis; cardiotomy; chondrotomy; tachyphagia; cardiomegaly; bradyphagia; hydrotherapy; urolith; cardiophobia; ophthalmoplegia; metropexy; parodontosis; rhinopathy; gynecology.

5. Form the Greek & Latin clinical terms according to the meaning:

- excess of lipids in the blood
- paralysis (palsy) of the tongue
- fixation of the vagina
- particular type of white blood cell that has one nucleus
- producing (caused) by fever
- renal stone
- abnormally fast heart rate
- slowing of swallowing
- collection of fluid in the pericardial cavity
- fear of water
- branch of medicine that treats diseases of the genital tract in women
- benign tumour composed of fatty tissues
- dark pigment excreted in the urine
- study of tumours
- decreased number of erythrocytes
- palsy (paralysis) of the bladder
- fixation of the rectum
- one finger on the hand
• urinary stone
• abnormally slow heart action (slow pulse)
• use of water in the treatment of disease or injury
• producing fat
• microscopic study of tissues
• dark pigment in the skin
• palsy (paralysis) of one extremity
LESSON 7

SAMPLE OF A FINAL TEST IN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

In this lesson you will:

• become familiar with a Final Test sample

Final Test in Clinical Terminology

V - 2

I. Explain the meanings of the following terms:

1. pyuria                           14. adenocytus
2. hydrophobia                      15. microgastría
3. anaesthesiologia                16. apha gia
4. myopathia                       17. neurorrhaphia
5. rhinolithus                     18. gastroduodenostomía
6. phlebitis                       19. cholecystomía
7. ophthalmoplegia                 20. haemarthrosis
8. cardiologia                     21. erythropenia
9. polyuria                        22. chondrodystrophia
10. pyrogenus                      23. homogenus
11. cyanopsia                      24. hyperglykaemia
12. spondyloarthritis              25. hysterectomía
13. stomatoscopia

V 2
II. Form the Greek & Latin clinical terms according to the following meanings:

1. disease of the vessel; 7. presence of glucose (sugar) in the urine;
2. fixation of the uterus; 8. loss of the voice;
3. tumour of the kidney; 9. of different kind or type;
4. inflammation of the surrounding heart tissue; 10. large tongue;
5. removal of the cornea; 11. study of tuberculosis;
6. X-ray examination of veins; 12. developing from ear.
PART III. PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

LESSON 1

INTRODUCTION TO THE PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

In this lesson you will:
• Become familiar with the main groups of drugs
• Learn the names of the main pharmaceutical forms
• Learn some Latin and Greek component elements of drug names
• Become familiar with the word-formative and grammar structure of pharmaceutical terms

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Introduction to the pharmaceutical terminology
II. Pharmaceutical forms
III. Latin and Greek component elements of drug names
IV. Word-formative and grammar structure of pharmaceutical terms
V. Exercises.

I. INTRODUCTION TO THE PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

The pharmaceutical terminology is the terminology used in Pharmacology (derived from the Greek “pharmacon” – “drug”). Pharmacology is the study of medicinal substances called pharmaceuticals. The International Drug Nomenclature amounts at the present time to 400,000 drugs.

Learning objectives of this course of studies: at the end of the course of studies you should:
1. know how a prescription is written in Latin;
2. write correctly in Latin one-word and multiword pharmaceutical terms;
3. know Latin and Greek component elements of drug names;
4. learn a certain amount of Latin drug names.

Main pharmaceutical terms

- **Pharmaceutical form (drug form)** – form of the drug suitable for a definite method of administration. These forms are divided into:
  * liquids (solutions, infusions, decoctions, tinctures, extracts, mucilages, emulsions, suspensions, mixtures and liniments),
  * semisolids (ointments, pastes, suppositories, plasters) and
  * solids (tablets, dragee, powders).

- **Drug** is any material or substance, whether natural or synthetic, that can be used to treat an illness, relieve a symptom or modify a chemical process in the body for a specific purpose. The names of drugs can be **officinal** or **magistral**:
  * **Officinal** (from Latin. officina – drugstore) **drugs** are drugs which are manufactured by the pharmaceutical industry and which have a standard contents indicated in pharmacopeias. For example: *tabulettae Cefalexini*, *unguentum “Lorindenum”*. Such drugs can have **international nonpatent names and trade names**:
    - **International nonpatent names** are given by the WHO (World Health Organisation). These are mostly the chemical names of drugs. Under these names the drugs can be used in any country.
    - **Trade name (proprietary or brand name)** is the copyrighted name assigned by the drug company making the drug and is followed by the symbol ®.
* Magistral drugs (from Latin magister - teacher) are called the drugs which are made at the direction of a physician.

- Medicinal substance is a chemical compound used as a drug. Medicinal substances are produced by chemical means.

- Drug preparation is a drug prepared in a definite pharmaceutical form.

II. MAIN PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS

You should learn the main pharmaceutical forms as follows (in a dictionary form!):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Liquids</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Solutio, ōnis f</td>
<td>solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Mucilago, ĭnis f</td>
<td>mucilage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Emulsum, i n</td>
<td>emulsion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Suspensio, ōnis f</td>
<td>suspension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Infusum, i n</td>
<td>infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Decoctum, i n</td>
<td>decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Tinctura, ae f</td>
<td>tincture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Extractum, i n (fluīdum)</td>
<td>extract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Mixtūra, ae f</td>
<td>mixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Linimentum, i n</td>
<td>liniment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Gutta, ae f</td>
<td>drop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Sirūpus, i m</td>
<td>syrup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Olēum, i n</td>
<td>oil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semisolids</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14. Unguentum, i n</td>
<td>ointment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Pasta, ae f</td>
<td>paste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Suppositorium, i n</td>
<td>suppository</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suppositorium rectāle (va-</td>
<td>rectal (vaginal) suppository</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gināle)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Emplastrum, i n</td>
<td>plaster</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Solids</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18. Tabuletta, ae f</td>
<td>tablet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Other drug forms

24. Capsula, ae f  
capsule

Capsule is a drug in powdered or pellet form that has been enclosed in a soluble gelatin-like capsule.

25. Aërosōlum, i n  
aerosol

26. Membranūla (ae f)  
ophthalmīca (us, a, um)  
(Lamella ophthalmīca)  
ophthalmic film

Ophthalmic films are absorbable gelatin films containing drug substances

III. LATIN AND GREEK COMPONENT ELEMENTS OF DRUG NAMES

Many pharmaceutical terms include in their names Greek and Latin component elements of frequent occurrence similar to the clinical terminology. With a knowledge of these elements you will be able to write complicated drug names with a correct spelling and to understand their meaning.

GREEK AND LATIN ELEMENTS CARRYING INFORMATION ABOUT PHARMACEUTICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF A DRUG

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-aesthes-, -cain-</td>
<td>local anesthetic</td>
<td>Anaesthesinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Novocainum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-alg-, -dol-</td>
<td>analgetic</td>
<td>Pentalginum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Panadolum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-andr-, -ster-, -test-</td>
<td>male sex hormone</td>
<td>Testosteronum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Androfortum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>-as-</td>
<td>enzymes</td>
<td>Lydasum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>-asthm-</td>
<td>against asthma</td>
<td>Antiasthmocrinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suffix</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Drug Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>-barb-</td>
<td>soforific, hypnotic</td>
<td>Barbitalum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>-cid-</td>
<td>antimicrobial</td>
<td>Streptocidum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>-cill-</td>
<td>antibiotics-penicillins</td>
<td>Bicillinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>-cort-</td>
<td>adrenal cortex hormone</td>
<td>Corticotrophinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>-cycl-</td>
<td>antibiotics-tetracyclines</td>
<td>Vitacyclinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>-menth-</td>
<td>containing mint</td>
<td>Boromentholium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>-morph-</td>
<td>narcotics</td>
<td>Apomorphinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>-myc-</td>
<td>against fungi, antimycotic</td>
<td>Amycazolum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>-oestr-</td>
<td>Female sex hormone</td>
<td>Oestroneum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>-phyll-</td>
<td>(from Greek <em>phillon</em> - leaf)</td>
<td>Theophyllinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>-pres(s)-, -tens-</td>
<td>hypertensives</td>
<td>Apressinum Angiotensinamidum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>-pyr-</td>
<td>antipyretic drugs</td>
<td>Pyramidonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>-sed-</td>
<td>sedatives</td>
<td>Valosedanum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>-sept-</td>
<td>antiseptics</td>
<td>Pharyngosept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>-sulfa-</td>
<td>sulfamides</td>
<td>Sulfadiazinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>-the-</td>
<td>from tea-leaf</td>
<td>Thealbinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>-vit-</td>
<td>vitamins</td>
<td>Hexavitum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IV. WORD-FORMATIVE AND GRAMMAR STRUCTURE OF PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS**

The drug names can be prescribed by **international nonpatent names** and **trade names**.

**International nonpatent names** in prescriptions after “Recipe:” are in Genitive singular without inverted commas:

* Tetracyclini
* Vaselini

**Trade drug names** are prescribed as follows: the drug name is placed after the pharmaceutical form in Nominative and is in inverted commas:

* Suppositoria «Anaesthesolum» - suppositories of anaesthesol
One-word terms

1. All Latin drug names are neuter nouns of the 2nd declension ending by -um. They are written with the first capital letter as the names of chemical elements, medicinal plants:

   Tetracyclīnum, i n

   • A few exceptions to this rule are drug names by -a: No-spa, Do-pa (1st declension).

Multiword terms

1) If the drug preparation name includes a pharmaceutical form it is on the first place: solutīo, unguentum, tinctūra etc.

2) The drug name is placed after the pharmaceutical form and begins with the capital letter:

   solutīo Streptocīdi - solution of streptocid
   unguentum Tetracyclīni - ointment of tetracycline
   tinctūra Menthae - tincture of mint

3) Adjectives

   • are written at the end of the prescription line:

   Solutīo Synoestrōli oleōsa - oil solution of synoestrol

   • or are placed after a noun:

   Mentha piperīta - peppermint
   Tabulettae Acīdi glutaminīci obductae - coated glutaminic acid tablets
V. VOCABULARY

Learn components of medicinal plants

1. cortex, ōcis m cortex
2. flos, floris m flower
3. folium, i n leaf
4. herba, ae f herb
5. radix, ōcis f root
6. rhizōma, ātis n rhizome

Learn names of medicinal plants

7. Calendūla, ae f calendula
8. Chamomilla, ae f matricary
9. Crataegus, i f hawthorn
10. Digitālis, is f foxglove
11. Farfāra, ae f coltsfoot
12. Frangūla, ae f buckthorn
13. Leonūrus, i m motherwort
14. Mentha, ae f mint
15. Quercus, us f oak
16. Valeriāna, ae f valerian

VI. EXCERCISES

Exercise 1. Read drug names, find component elements carrying information about pharmaceutical characteristics, give their meaning:

Bicillinum, Apressinum, Nicovitum, Pyramidonum, Polyoestradiolum, Hydrolysinum, Boromentholum, Diprophyllinum, Laevomycetinum, Decamevitum, Cerebrolysinum, Brulamycinum, Olivomycinum, Bruneomycinum, Theophyllinum, Cocarboxylasum,
Antiasthmocrinum, Synoestrolum, Pentavitum, Urosulfanum, Gentamycinum, Novocainamidum, Octoestronum.

**Exercise 2. Translate from Latin into English:**


**Exercise 3. Translate from English into Latin:**

Ointment of tetracycline, solution of novocain, tablets of octoestrol, solution of glucose, ointment of heparin, tablets of myelosan, tincture of valerian, tincture of motherwort, herb of valerian, extract of motherwort, tablets of theophyllin, flowers of matricary, tablets of baralgin, liniment of streptocid, ophthalmic ointment of dibiomycin, antiasthmatic species, tincture of valerian root, extract of buckthorn, tincture of oak root.
LESSON 2

STANDARD PRESCRIPTION PHRASES
INDICATING ORDERS AND INSTRUCTIONS

In this lesson you will:

- Learn basic standard phrases used in prescriptions
- Learn clinic Latin and Greek component elements used in drug names
- Learn Latin and Greek component elements carrying information on chemical composition of a drug

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Standard prescription phrases indicating orders and instructions
II. Clinic Latin and Greek component elements used in drug names
III. Latin and Greek component elements carrying information on chemical composition of a drug
IV. Exercises.

I. STANDARD PRESCRIPTION PHRASES
INDICATING ORDERS AND INSTRUCTIONS

In the Latin part of a prescription some verb forms are used which indicate orders and instructions. They are required in order to give to a pharmacist instructions how to make up and dispense drugs. You should learn these verb forms as standard prescription phrases. The meaning “order, instruction, direction” is expressed in the Latin part of a prescription by “imperative mode” and “conjunctive mode” of a Latin verb.

a) Imperative mode

From all imperative mode forms only the 2nd person singular form is used in prescriptions. You will have to memorize standard prescription phrases in the imperative mode as follows:
b) Conjunctive mode

The Latin conjunctive mode has many meanings. Only one meaning “order, instruction, direction” is used in prescriptions. These forms are translated from Latin into English with the word-combination “let it be”. You will have to memorize standard prescription phrases in the conjunctive mode as follows:

| • Detur       | Let it be given          |
| • Signētur    | Let it be labeled        |
| • Misceātur   | Let it be mixed          |
| • Sterilisētur! (with the exclamation mark) | Let it be sterilized! |
| • Repetātur   | Let it be repeated       |
| • Dentur tales doses | Let it be given of such doses |

Attention!!! - Prescription phrases in imperative and conjunctive modes have the same meaning: order, instruction, direction, therefore they are completely equal and interchangeable. You may use each of them.

b) Verb fieri in prescriptions

The prescription phrase with the verb fieri is often used in prescriptions. Model:

Misce, (ut) fiat + pharmaceutical form in Nominative singular

Note: Conjunction ut is usually omitted
Examples:

- Misce, fiat pulvis. Mix to make a powder
- Misce, fiat unguentum. Mix to make an ointment
- Misce, fiat linimentum. Mix to make a liniment

**BUT!**

- Misce, **fiunt** species. Mix to make species
  (species - plural)

## II. CLINIC LATIN AND GREEK COMPONENT ELEMENTS USED IN DRUG NAMES

In drug names some clinical Latin and Greek component elements are used which are already known to you. You will have to pay attention to their spelling and meaning in the pharmaceutical terminology:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>##</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>-angi-, -vas-</td>
<td>spasmolytics, referring to vessels</td>
<td>Angiotensinamidum, Vasographinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>-cardi-, -cor-, -cord-</td>
<td>cardiovascular drugs</td>
<td>Cardiovalenum, Corazolum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>-chol-</td>
<td>cholagogic, bile-expelling</td>
<td>Chologonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>-cyt-</td>
<td>(from Greek «cell») antianemic drugs</td>
<td>Cytamenum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>-derm-</td>
<td>for treatment of skin diseases</td>
<td>Dermosolonom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>-erythr-</td>
<td>(from Greek «red»)</td>
<td>Erythromycinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>glyc-</td>
<td>(from Greek «sweet»)</td>
<td>Glycerophosphatatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>-haem-, -aem-</td>
<td>drugs influencing hemopoesis</td>
<td>Haematogenum, Liquaemumin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>-hepat-, -hepar-</td>
<td>extracts from liver</td>
<td>Vitohepatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>-lys(in)-</td>
<td>drugs for destruction and excretion</td>
<td>Sarcolysinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>-my(o)-</td>
<td>(from Greek «muscle»)</td>
<td>Myostatinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-aeth-</td>
<td>containing ethyl</td>
<td>Aethinalum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-(a)zin-, -zol-, -(a)zid-</td>
<td>containing nitrogen</td>
<td>Aminazinum, Corazol, Saluzidum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-benz-</td>
<td>containing benzol</td>
<td>Benzonalum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>-chlor-</td>
<td>containing chlorine</td>
<td>Chloraminum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>-cyan-</td>
<td>(from Greek «cyanus» - blue)</td>
<td>Cyanidum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>-hydr-</td>
<td>water, hydrogen</td>
<td>Hydrocortisonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>-meth-</td>
<td>containing methyl</td>
<td>Methacinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>-oxy-</td>
<td>containing oxygen</td>
<td>Oxylidinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>-phen-</td>
<td>containing phenyl</td>
<td>Phenol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>-phosph-</td>
<td>containing phosphorus</td>
<td>Phosphacol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>-phthor-</td>
<td>containing fluorine</td>
<td>Phthoracizinum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>-thi-</td>
<td>containing sulfur</td>
<td>Thiophosphamidum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>-yl-</td>
<td>containing hydrocarbon radical</td>
<td>Methyluracilum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. VOCABULARY

Learn drug names:

1. Am\textit{yllum}, \textit{i} \textit{n} Trit\textit{ici} (\textit{um}, \textit{i} \textit{n}) wheat starch
2. Chloxy\textit{llum}, \textit{i} \textit{n} chloxyl
3. Dibaz\textit{oolum}, \textit{i} \textit{n} dibazol
4. Euca\textit{tolum}, \textit{i} \textit{n} eucatol
5. Hydrochlorothiaz\textit{idum}, \textit{i} \textit{n} hydrochlorothiazid
6. Ichth\textit{yolum}, \textit{i} \textit{n} ichthyl
7. Mycosol\textit{onum}, \textit{i} \textit{n} mycosolon
8. Ol\textit{eum} (\textit{i}, \textit{n}) Ric\textit{ini} (\textit{us}, \textit{i} \textit{m}) castor oil
9. Phthorurac\textit{ilum}, \textit{i} \textit{n} phthoruracil
10. Polypher\textit{apanum}, \textit{i} \textit{n} polyphepan
11. Solut\textit{io} Ammoni\textit{i} (\textit{um}, \textit{i} \textit{n}) liquid ammonia (solution of causti\textit{ci} (\textit{us}, \textit{a}, \textit{um}) ammonia)
12. Sulfadimez\textit{inum}, \textit{i} \textit{n} sulfadimezin
13. Synthomyc\textit{inum}, \textit{i} \textit{n} synthomycin
14. Vase\textit{linum}, \textit{i} \textit{n} vaseline
15. Xeroform\textit{i}um, \textit{i} \textit{n} xerofom

Medical plants:

16. Convallar\textit{ia}, \textit{ae} \textit{f} lily of the valley
17. Eucalyptus, \textit{i} \textit{f} eucalyptus
18. Linum, \textit{i} \textit{n} flax
19. Plant\textit{ago}, \textit{inis} \textit{f} common (greated) plantain
20. Salv\textit{ia}, \textit{ae} \textit{f} sage

Other words:

21 antiasthmat\textit{icus}, \textit{a}, \textit{um} antiasthmatic
22. diuret\textit{icus}, \textit{a}, \textit{um} diuretic, urinative
23. piperit\textit{us}, \textit{a}, \textit{um} pepper
V. EXCERCISES

Exercise 1. Read drug names, find component elements carrying information about pharmaceutical characteristics, give their meaning:

  Benzonalum, Dipheninum, Normotensum, Pyrimethaninum,
  Acetylcysteinum, Sulfalenum, Penicillaminum, Erythromycinum,
  Sulfathiazolum, Sulfamethoxazolum, Vancomycinum, Diphenhydraminum,
  Cyclosporinum, Methyluracilum, Hydrolysinum, Nitroglycerinum,
  Benzobarbitalum, Methindionum, Mycoseptinum, Chlorochininum,
  Cyclophosphamidum, Cyanocobalaminum, Cerebrolysinum.

Exercise 2. Translate from English into Latin:

  Solution of papaverin, tincture of mint, granules of amidopyrin, ointment of xeroform, tablets of sulfadimezin, oil of eucalyptus, motherwort herb tincture, foxglove leaves powder, tablets of dibazol, fluid extract of hawthorn, ointment of ichthyol, solution of procainamid, tablets of phenobarbital, sage leaves tincture, decoction of oak cortex, mint leaves tincture, emulsion of castor oil, tablet of novocainamid, liquid ammonia, oil of peppermint, eucalyptus leaves tincture, tincture of calendula, leaf of common plantain, solution of salvin, matricary leaves, granule of plantaglucid, drops of eucatol, solution of aminophyllin, coltsfoot leaf granules.

Exercise 3. Translate from English into Latin, using the given vocabulary:

1. Give 10 ml of epinephrin solution.
2. Take 200 ml of valerian root tincture.
3. Add 5 ml of castor oil.
4. Give 10 ml of menthol oil.
5. Take 30.0 of xeroform ointment.
6. Mix 5 ml of mint tincture and 10 ml of motherwort tincture.
7. Add 3 ml of peppermint oil.
8. Sterilize 20 ml of castor oil.
9. Take 5.0 of boromenthol ointment.
10. Give 25.0 of synthomycin liniment.
11. Mix 10 ml of lily of the valley tincture and 15 ml of valerian tincture.
13. Take 20.0 of castor oil emulsion.
LESSON 3

MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION
LIQUIDS AND SEMISOLIDS IN PRESCRIPTIONS

In this lesson you will:

- Become familiar with “medical prescription” and its components
- Learn the requirements to the Latin part of the prescription
- Learn to prescribe liquid and semisolid pharmaceutical forms

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. General information on a medical prescription
II. Requirements to the Latin part of a prescription
III. Liquid pharmaceutical forms in prescriptions
IV. Semisolid pharmaceutical forms in prescriptions
V. The most-used prescription phrases I
VI. Exercises.

I. GENERAL INFORMATION ON A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

The word "prescription" can be decomposed into "pre" and "script" and literally means "to write before" a drug can be prepared. The concept of prescriptions date back to the beginning of history. So long as there were medications and a writing system to capture directions for preparation and usage, there were prescriptions. Latin served a good purpose on prescriptions when they were first written in the 1400s. Spread widely by Roman soldiers and traders, Latin was the main language of western Europe for hundreds of years. It was unlikely to change, because it was a "dead" language, and it was unlikely to be misinterpreted, because it was exact in its meaning. Of course, the patients who didn't know Latin probably didn't have the vaguest idea what they were taking.
Who can issue prescriptions are governed by local legislation. In the United States, all states, physicians, veterinarians, dentists, and pediatrists have full prescription power. Many countries allow mid-level practitioners different prescription privileges. Nurse practitioners, physician assistants, optometrists, homeopathic physicians, registered pharmacists, naturopathic physicians, and doctors of oriental medicine currently represent the spectrum of mid-level practitioners. Each country regulates what (if any) prescription powers members of the above group are allowed.

Prescriptions are typically written on preprinted prescription forms that are assembled into pads. Preprinted on the form is text that identifies the document as a prescription, the name and address of the hospital or the prescribing doctor.

Predating modern legal definitions of a prescription, a prescription traditionally is composed of four parts: a "superscription", "inscription", "subscription" and "signature".

1. The “superscription” section contains the date of the prescription and patient information (name, address, age, etc).

2. The word “Recipe:” (in English prescriptions “Rx”) addressed to the pharmacist separates the superscription from the “inscriptions” section. This is literally an abbreviation for an exhortation to the patient to “take to” what is described in the inscription section. The inscription section defines what is the medication.

3. The “subscription” section contains dispensing directions to the pharmacist. This may be compounding instructions or quantities.

4. The “signature” section contains directions to the patient.

Latin in Prescriptions in Some English-speaking Countries: The only part of a prescription where Latin appears today, however, is in the directions for taking the drug. This use has become a kind of medical shorthand. Some of these
abbreviated terms have the potential to cause medication errors because they look so similar in handwriting, so their use is on the decline.

E.g.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ante cibum</td>
<td>ac</td>
<td>before meals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro re nata</td>
<td>prn</td>
<td>as needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaque 3 hora</td>
<td>q 3 h</td>
<td>every 3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ter in die</td>
<td>tid</td>
<td>3 times a day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. REQUIREMENTS TO THE LATIN PART OF A PRESCRIPTION

The Latin part of a prescription begins with the word “Recipe” and ends with “Signa”. You will have to learn the general requirements to the Latin part of a prescriptions as follows (abbreviations in prescriptions are impermissible):

1. The Latin part of a prescription begins with “Recipe”, this is a form of address of a physician to a pharmacist:

   **Recipe**: Take:

   • *Every prescription line*, as well as *all drug names* begin with the **capital letter**

   • Every drug name is written in a separate prescription line. In doing so a blank space is left after “Recipe” (the pharmacist indicates a price of a drug here). If there is not enough space for a drug name in one line it is carried over to the next line with the left indent:

     \[
     \text{Recipe:} \quad \text{Phenyl\textsubscript{i} \textasciitilde salicyl\textsubscript{a}tis 3,0} \\
     \text{Spir\textit{itus aethyl\textit{ici quantum satis}} \textbf{ad soluti\textit{\texto{o}nem}}} \\
     \text{Vasel\textsubscript{i}ni ad 30,0} \\
     \text{Misce, fiat unguentum} \\
     \text{Da. Signa: Apply to the skin of the face}
     \]
2. The drug names after “Recipe” are **in Genitive**

3. After the drug name its **quantity** is indicated. The doses of drugs are indicated in the decimal numeration system:

- **Gram amounts** - the abbreviation «gr» is not indicated, the quantity is indicated with decimal points – 10.0 (10 gr.); 0.25 (0,25 gr) etc.
- **Milliliter amounts** - 10 ml, 0.2 ml;
- **Units of activity** - ED: 100000 ED (100000 units of activity).

*E.g:* Recipe: Kalii chloridi 3,0  
Insulîni 25 ED  
Solutiōnis Glucōsi 10% - 1000 ml  
Misceātur. Sterilisētur!  
Detur. Signētur: For intravenous infusions.

- **Drops amounts** (are used seldom) – the number of drops is indicated with Roman figures – singular **guttam** (one drop - **guttam I**), plural **guttas** (five drops - **guttas V**);
- Sometimes a physician does not indicate the dosage but affords to a pharmacist an opportunity to determine the quantity of a drug on his own; in that case **quantum satis** is written in the prescription.

If several drugs are prescribed in the same amount, so the dose is indicated only after the latter one and the abbreviation **ana** (of each) is written:

*E.g:* Recipe: Cupri citrātis  
Lanolīni  
Vaselīni ana 5,0

Take: Coper citrate  
Lanoline  
Vaseline of each 5,0
Writing good prescriptions

- careful use of decimal points to avoid ambiguity:
  - avoid unnecessary decimal points: 5 mL instead of 5.0 mL to avoid possible misinterpretation of 5.0=50
  - always zero prefix decimals: e.g. 0.5 instead of .5 to avoid misinterpretation with .5=5
  - never have trailing zeros on decimals: e.g. use 0.5 instead of .50 to avoid misinterpretation with .50=50
  - avoid decimals altogether by changing the units: 0.5 g =500 mg

III. LIQUID PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN PRESCRIPTIONS

Solutions – Solutiōnes

- The Genitive form after “Recipe” – Solutiōnis.
- Solutions can be alcoholic, oil and glyceric, respectively the Latin Genitive forms after “Recipe” are Solutiōnis spirituōsae, Solutiōnis oleōsae, Solutiōnis glycerinōsae (solutio – feminine!), the adjective to be placed at the end of the prescription line before the dosage.
- The solution concentration is indicated in the following way: Recipe: Solutiōnis Camphŏrae oleōsae 10% - 100 ml.

Mucilages – Mucilagīnes

- The Genitive form after “Recipe” – Mucilagīnis.
- The most frequently used mucilage is the starch mucilage: Recipe: Mucilagīnis Amīli
Suspensions – Suspensiōnes

- The Genitive form after “Recipe” – Suspensiōnis.
- E.g.: Recipe: Suspensiōnis Hydrocortisōni

Emulsions – Emulsa

- The Genitive form after “Recipe” – Emulsi.
- E.g.: Recipe: Emulsi olēi Ricīni.

Infusions and decoctions – Infūsa et Decocta

- The Genitive form after “Recipe” – Infūsi, Decocti.
- After the pharmaceutical form parts of medicinal plants are indicated:
  * Cortex - cortex (Genitive – cortīcis)
  * Root - radix (Genitive – radīcis)
  * Rhizome – rhizōma (Genitive – rhizomātis)
  * Leaf – folīum (Genitive singular – folīi, Genitive plural - foliōrum)
  * Herb – herba (Genitive – herbae)
  * Flower – flos (Genitive singular – flores, Genitive plural - florum)
- E.g.: Recipe: Decocti cortīcis Quercus

Tinctures – Tinctūrae

- The Genitive form after “Recipe” – Tinctūrae.
- E.g.: Recipe: Tinctūrae Valeriānae.

Extracts – Extracta

- The Genitive form after “Recipe” – Extracti.
• Three general types of extracts are distinguished: fluid extracts (\textit{Extractum fluidum} – \textit{extracti fluidi}), thick extracts (\textit{Extractum spissum} – \textit{extracti spissi}) and dry extracts (\textit{Extractum siccum} – \textit{extracti sicci}).
• E.g.: \textit{Recipe: Extracti Frangūlae fluidi}

\textbf{Liniments – Linimenta}

• The Genitive form after “Recipe” – \textit{Linimenti}.
• E.g.: \textit{Recipe: Linimenti Synthomycīni}.

\section*{IV. SEMISOLID PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN PRESCRIPTIONS}

\textbf{Ointments – Unguenta}

• The Genitive form after “Recipe” – \textit{Unguenti}.
• Eye ointment – Unguentum ophthālmīcum (Unguentī ophthālmīci).
• E.g.: \textit{Recipe: Unguenti Zinci}.

\textbf{Pastes – Pastae}

• The Genitive form after “Recipe” – \textit{Pastae}.
• E.g.: \textit{Recipe: Pastae Zinci}.

\textbf{Plasters – Emplastra}

• The Genitive form after “Recipe” – \textit{Emplastri}.
• Simple plaster – Emplastrum simplex (Emplastri simplīcis).
• E.g.: \textit{Recipe: Emplastri Plumbi simplīcis}.
### V. THE MOST-USED PRESCRIPTION PHRASES I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad 10,0</td>
<td>up to 10 gr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad usum externum</td>
<td>for external use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad usum internum</td>
<td>for internal use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ana</td>
<td>of each</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bis (tres) repetātur</td>
<td>Let it be repeated twice (three times)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cito!</td>
<td>urgent!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contra tussim</td>
<td>against cough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in ampullis</td>
<td>in ampoules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in capsūlis</td>
<td>in capsules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in vitro nigro</td>
<td>in a dark phial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non repetātur</td>
<td>do not repeat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numēro</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro auctōre</td>
<td>for himself – <em>if a doctor prescribes a drug for himself</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro infantībus</td>
<td>for children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro injectionībus</td>
<td>for injections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro me</td>
<td>for me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro narcōsi</td>
<td>for narcosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro suspensionībus</td>
<td>for suspensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quantum satis</td>
<td>in sufficient amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statim!</td>
<td>immediately!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VOCABULARY

Learn names of drugs:

1. Aether, ěris m  ether
2. Aethinyloestradiölum, i n  aethinyloestradiol
3. Amidopyrīnum, i n  amidopyrin
4. Aminophyllīnum, i n  aminophyllin
5. Ampicillīnum, i n  ampicillin
6. Anaesthesīnum, i n  anaesthesin
7. Cerebrolysīnum, i n  cerebrolysin
8. Corvalōlum, i n  corvalol
9. Cortisōnum, i n  cortison
10. Dimedrōlum, i n  dimedrol
11. Furazolidōnum, i n  furazolidon
12. Furacilīnum, i n  furacilin
13. Glucōsum, i n  glucose
14. Hepavītum, i n  heparvit
15. Nitroglycerīnum, i n  nitroglycerin
16. Novocaīnum, i n  novocain
17. Oxaphenamīdum, i n  oxaphenamid
18. Phenacetīnum, i n  phenacetin
19. Pyrazidōlum, i n  pyrazidol
20. Sacchārum, i n  saccharum/sugar
21. Strophanthīnum, i n  strophanthin
22. Sulfazīnum, i n  sulfazin
23. Validōlum, i n  validol

Learn names of medicinal plants:

24. Belladonna, ae f  belladonna
25. Rheum, i n  rhubarb
26. Urtīca, ae f  

Other words:
27. aethylīcus, a, um  ethyl
28. aqua, ae f  water
29. destillātus, a, um  distilled
30. glycerinōsus, a, um  glyceric
31. oleōsus, a, um  oily, oil
32. pectorālis, e  pectoral
33. rectificātus, a, um  rectificat
34. spirituōsus, a, um  spirituous, alcoholic
35. spirītus, us m  alcohol

VI. EXCERCISES

Exercise 1. Read drug names, find component elements carrying information about pharmaceutical characteristics, give their meaning:


Exercise 2. Translate from English into Latin:

Decoction of buckthorn cortex for injections, apomorphin in ampoules, leaf of common plantain, solution of furacilin for external use, castor oil in capsules, emulsion of castor oil, aevit in capsules, tablets of amidopyrin and phenacetin of each 0,25, powder of ampicillin for suspensions, liniment of synthomycin,
solution of strophanthine in ampoules, tincture of matricary flowers, oily solution of nitroglycerin, spirituous solution of furacilin, decoction of hawthorn cortex, species pectoral, rhubarb syrup, fluid extract of backthorn, powder of foxglove leaves, decoction of oak cortex, dry extract of belladonna, species diuretic, aether for narcosis, mint pepper leaves.

**Exercise 3. Translate the following prescriptions from English into Latin:**

1) Take:  
Tincture of lily of the valley  
Tincture of valerian of each 10 ml  
Solution of nitroglycerin 1% - 1 ml  
Validol 2 ml  
Let it be mixed.  
Let it be given.  
Let it be labeled:

2) Take:  
Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml  
Let it be given.  
Let it be labeled:

3) Take:  
Solution of glucose 5% - 500 ml  
Let it be sterilized!  
Give.  
Write on a label:

4) Take:  
Powder of rhubarb root 0,06  
Give of such doses number 50  
Write on a label:

5) Take:  
Emulsion of castor oil 30,0 - 200 ml
Give.
Write on a label:

6) Take: Phenobarbital 0,05
Sacchar 0,2
Mix to make a powder
Give of such doses number 10
Write on a label:

7) Take: Cerebrolysin 1 ml
Give of such doses number 10 in ampoules
Write on a label:

8) Take: Anaesthesin 2,5
Talc 15,0
Vaseline up to 50,0
Mix to make a liniment
Give.
Write on a label:

9) Take: Solution of aminophyllin 24% - 1 ml
Give of such doses number 6 in ampoules
Write on a label:

10) Take: Fluid extract of buckthorn 4,0
Powder of rhubarb root 3,0
Dry extract of belladonna 0,7
Mix. Give.
Write on a label:
LESSON 4

PRESCRIPTION REGULATIONS FOR TABLETS, SUPPOSITORIES AND OPTHALMIC FILMS
SOLIDS AND OTHER PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN PRESCRIPTIONS

In this lesson you will:

• Become familiar with prescription regulations for tablets, suppositories and ophthalmic films.
• Learn to prescribe solid and other pharmaceutical forms.
• Learn the most used prescription phrases.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Prescription regulations for tablets, suppositories and ophthalmic films.
II. Preposition “cum” in prescriptions.
III. Solid pharmaceutical forms in prescriptions
IV. Other pharmaceutical forms in prescriptions
V. The most-used prescription phrases II
VI. Exercises.

1. PRESCRIPTION REGULATIONS FOR TABLETS, SUPPOSITORIES AND OPTHALMIC FILMS

The prescription regulations for tablets, suppositories and ophthalmic films are different from other pharmaceutical forms. The names of these pharmaceutical forms in prescriptions after “Recipe” are not in Genitive but in Accusative. You will have to remember the endings of these pharmaceutical forms as follows:
• Tabulettam (obductam)  \textit{tablet (coated)}
• Tabulettas (obductas)  \textit{tablets (coated)}
• Suppositoriūnum (vagināle, rectāle)  \textit{suppository (rectal, vaginal)}
• Suppositoriā (vaginālia, rectaliā)  \textit{suppositories (rectal, vaginal)}
• Lamellas (membranūlas) ophthalmīcas  \textit{ophthalmic films}

\textit{E.g.}:

\textit{Recipe:} Tabulettam Digoxīni 0,0001
Da tales doses numĕro 12
Signa:

\textit{Recipe:} Tabulettas extracti Valeriānae 0,02 \textbf{obductas}
numĕro 50
Da. Signa:

\textit{Recipe:} Suppositoriā rectaliā Apilāci 0,005 numĕro 12
Da. Signa:

\textit{Recipe:} Membranūlas ophthalmīcas cum Kanamyčīni sulfāte 0,00003 numĕro 100
Da. Signa:

\textbf{II. PREPOSITION “CUM” IN PRESCRIPTIONS}

The names of \textit{suppositories and ophthalmic films} drugs are often used with the preposition \textit{“cum” – with}. You will have to remember the nouns endings after the preposition \textit{“cum”} as follows:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Nouns of the 2\textsuperscript{nd} declension – ending \textit{-o} (cum Ichthyo\textit{o}, cum Oxytetracycl\textit{īno})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Nouns of the 3\textsuperscript{rd} declension – ending \textit{-ibus} (with valerian roots - cum radic\textit{ībus} Valeriānae)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The drug names with the nouns of other declensions with the preposition \textit{“cum”} are not in use.
III. SOLID PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN PRESCRIPTIONS

**Tablets – Tabulettae**

- The prescription regulations for tablets see above.
- There are two prescription forms of tablets:
  1. Initially a drug name with the dose is indicated followed by the phrase “Da tales doses numĕro … in tabulettis” (Give of such doses number … in a tablet form).
  2. The second prescription form begins with the word “Tabulettam”, followed by the drug name and the dose, and ends with the phrase “Da tales doses numĕro …” (Give of such doses number …).

**Compare:**

1\textsuperscript{st} prescription form:

Recipe: Paracetamŏli 0,3

**Da tales doses numĕro 6 in tabulettis**

Signa: 1 tablet in case of headache

2\textsuperscript{nd} prescription form:

Recipe: Tabulettam Paracetamŏli 0,3

**Da tales doses numĕro 6**

Signa: 1 tablet in case of headache

- Tablets known as **trade drug names** are prescribed as follows: initially the word “Tabulettas” is indicated, the drug name is placed after the pharmaceutical form in Nominative and is in inverted commas, followed by the word “numĕro”:

Recipe: Tabulettas “Nicoverīnum” numĕro 20

Da. Signa: 1 tablet twice a day

Dragée – Dragée
• The word “dragée” has no declension endings.
• There is only one prescription form for dragée: the word “Dragée”, then a drug name and the phrase “Da tales doses numĕro…” (Give of such doses number …).

Recipe: Dragée Diazolfīni 0,05

**Da tales doses numĕro 20**

Signa: 1 dragee twice a day

**Powders – Pulvĕres**

• The Genitive form after “Recipe” – Pulvĕris.
• E.g.: Recipe: Pulvĕris radīcis Rhei
• Volatile and hygroscopic powders are given out packed in *waxed and paraffined paper* as indicated in prescriptions: E.g. - Da tales doses numĕro… in charta cerāta (Give of such doses number … in waxed paper).

**Granules – Granŭla**

• “Granŭlum” is neutrum.
• The Genitive form after “Recipe” – Granŭli (in plural often – Granulōrum).
• E.g.: Recipe: Granulōrum Natriī aminocylātis

a. **OTHER PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN PRESCRIPTIONS**

**Capsules – Capsŭlae**

• Capsule is a drug in powdered, fluid or pellet form that has been enclosed in a soluble gelatin-like capsule.
• Soft gelatine capsules and Elastic gelatine capsules are distinguished - Capsŭlae gelatinōsae molles et durae.
• In prescriptions the phrase “in capsūlis gelatinōsis” (in gelatine capsules) is indicated.

Ophthalmic films – Membranūlæ (Lamellae) ophthalmīcae

• Ophthalmic films are absorbable gelatin films containing drug substances.
• Membranūla and Lamella are synonyms.
• The prescription regulations for ophthalmic films see above.
• The ophthalmic films are often prescribed with the preposition “cum”.
• E.g.: Recipe: Membranūlas ophthalmīcas cum Florenālo.

Aerosols – Aërosōla

• The aerosols are prescribed in the following way: “Recipe” is followed by the word “Aërosōlum” (Accusative singular) and by the trade drug name in Nominative and in inverted commas, then the quantity after “numĕro” is indicated.
• E.g.: Recipe: Aërosōlum “Ephatīnum” numĕro 1.

V. THE MOST-USED PRESCRIPTION PHRASES II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in charta cerāta</td>
<td>in waxed paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in charta paraffināta</td>
<td>in paraffined paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in capsūlis gelatinōsis</td>
<td>in gelatine capsules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in capsūlis gelatinōsis elastīcis</td>
<td>in elastic gelatine capsules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in tabulettis (obductis)</td>
<td>in tablets (coated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum radicībus …</td>
<td>with … roots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Misce, fiat suppositorīum rectāle (vagināle)</td>
<td>Mix to make a rectal (vaginal) suppository</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Misce, fiat suppositorīa rectalīa (vaginalīa)</td>
<td>Mix to make rectal (vaginal) suppositories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Misce, fiat pulvis subtilissīmus</td>
<td>Mix to make the finest powder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VI. VOCABULARY

*Learn names of drugs:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Drug Name</th>
<th>English Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Analgīnum, i n</td>
<td>analgin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Corglycōnum, i n</td>
<td>corglycon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Diprophyllīnum, i n</td>
<td>diprophyllin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Euphyllīnum, i n</td>
<td>euphyllin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Florenālum, i n</td>
<td>florenal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Methylōestradiōlum, i n</td>
<td>methyloestriadiol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Nystatīnum, i n</td>
<td>nystatin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Phenobarbitālum, i n</td>
<td>phenobarbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Phenobolīnum, i n</td>
<td>phenobolin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Phnoxymenthylpenicillīnum, i n</td>
<td>phenoxymenthylpenicillin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Phthivazīdum, i n</td>
<td>phthivazid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Pyractēmum, i n</td>
<td>pyractam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Saluzīdum, i n</td>
<td>saluzid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Streptocīdum, i n</td>
<td>streptocid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Tetracyclīnum, i n</td>
<td>tetracycline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Iodum, i n</td>
<td>iodine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Learn names of medicinal plants:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Plant Name</th>
<th>English Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Alōē, es f</td>
<td>aloe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Althaea, ae f</td>
<td>althea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Cacao</td>
<td>cocoa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Millefolīum, i n</td>
<td>milfoil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Other words:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>English Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>liquid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>in (coated) tablets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>coated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>ophthalmic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
26. simplex, ēcis simple
27. solubilis, e soluble

VII. EXERCISES

Exercise 1. Read drug names, find component elements carrying information about pharmaceutical characteristics, give their meaning:


Exercise 2. Translate from English into Latin:

Solution of glucose, tablets of analgin, liquid extract of aloe, coated tablets of tetracyclin, tincture of matricary flowers, decoction of oak cortex, liniment of synthomycin, ointment of oxolin, syrup of althea, spirituous solution of iodine, granules of furazolidon, dragee of phenoxyphosphinum, solution of furacilin for external use, oily solution of phenobolin, tablets of pyroctam, powder of ampicillin for suspensions, coated tablets of valerian extract, rhizomes with valerian roots, mucilages of flax seeds, tincture of eucalyptus, infusion of peppermint leaves, leaf of aloe, leaves of sage, simple syrup, complex plaster, solution of corglycon, oily solution of nitroglycerin, soluble saluzid, powder and tablets of phthivazid, tablets for cough.
Exercise 3. Translate the following prescriptions from English into Latin:

1) Take: Powder of foxglove leaves 0,05
Sacchar 0,3
Mix to make a powder
Let it be given of such doses number 12
Let it be labeled:

2) Take: Cortex of hawthorn  30,0
Leaves of nettle
Herb of milfoil 10,0
Mix to make species
Let it be given
Let it be labeled:

3) Take: Powder of ampicillin for suspensions 60,0
Give in a dark phial
Write on a label:

4) Take: Suppositories with diprophyllin 0,5 number 10
Give
Write on a label:

5) Take: Tablets of microiodine with phenobarbital number 40
Give in a dark phial
Write on a label:

6) Take Ointment of tetracycline ophthalmic 10,0
Give
Write on a label:
7) Take: Sulfadimezin
    Streptocid
    Synthomycin of each 1,0
    Mix to make a powder
    Give
    Write on a label:

8) Take: Tetracycline 100 000 ED
    Give of such doses number 24 in a tablet form
    Write on a label:

9) Take: Tablets of tetracycline with nystatin coated 100 000 ED
    number 25
    Give
    Write on a label:

10) Take: Euphyllin 0,2
    Cocoa oil 2,0
    Mix to make a suppository
    Give of such doses number 6
    Write on a label:

11) Take: Ichthyol 3,0
    Vaseline up to 30,0
    Mix to make an ointment
    Give
    Write on a label:

12) Take: Ointment of furacilin 0,2% - 30,0
Give
Write on a label:

13) Take: Ointment of xeroform 10% - 30,0
    Give
    Write on a label:

14) Take: Methyloestradiol 0,00002
    Give of such doses number 20 in a tablet form
    Write on a label:

15) Take: Liquid extract of aloe 1 ml
    Give of such doses number 10 in ampoules
    Write on a label:

16) Take: Synthomycin 0,2
    Castor oil 20 ml
    Mix to make a liniment
    Give
    Write on a label:

17) Take: Tablets of valerian extract coated 0,02 number 50
    Give
    Write on a label:

18) Take: Tablet of furacilin 0,02
    Give of such doses number 10
    Write on a label:

19) Take: Ophthalmic films with florenal number 30
Give
Write on a label:

20) Take: Tablets of sulfadimezin 0,5 number 12
Give
Write on a label:
LESSON 5

LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS
ACIDS NAMES
OXIDES, PEROXIDES, HYDROXIDES

In this lesson you will:

• Become familiar with the Latin names of main chemical elements.
• Become familiar with the Latin names of acids.
• Become familiar with the Latin names of oxides, peroxides, hydroxides.

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Latin names of chemical elements.
II. Latin names of acids.
III. Latin names of oxides, peroxides, hydroxides.
IV. Exercises.

I. LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS

All Latin names of chemical elements are **neuter nouns of the 2nd declension**:  

_E.g._: Bromum, _i_ _n_; Iodum, _i_ _n_; Bismūthum, _i_ _n_

There are two exceptions to this rule:

• sulfur - _Sulfur, ūris_ _n_ (3rd declension)
• phosphorus - _Phosphōrus, _i_ _m_ (masculine)

Special attention must be given to the spelling of the following chemical elements:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Chemical element</strong></th>
<th><strong>Latin</strong></th>
<th><strong>English</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bi</td>
<td>Bismūthum, i n</td>
<td>bismuth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca</td>
<td>Calcīum, i n</td>
<td>calcium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fluōrum, i n or Phthorum, i n</td>
<td>fluorine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fe</td>
<td>Ferrum, i n</td>
<td>iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Hydrogenīum, i n</td>
<td>hydrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hg</td>
<td>Hydrargyrum, i n</td>
<td>mercury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Kalīum, i n</td>
<td>potassium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mg</td>
<td>Magnesīum, i n or Magnīum, i n</td>
<td>magnesium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na</td>
<td>Natrīum, i n</td>
<td>sodium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Oxygenīum, i n</td>
<td>oxygen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb</td>
<td>Plumbum, i n</td>
<td>lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Sulfur, ūris n</td>
<td>sulfur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zn</td>
<td>Zincum, i n</td>
<td>zinc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. LATIN NAMES OF ACIDS

The Latin names of acids consist of the noun “acīdum” (acīdum, i n - acid) and the concordant adjective of the 1st group:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>acīdum + stem of the chemical element name + -īc/ōs- + -um</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

a) Latin adjectives with the suffix -īc- and the ending -um correspond to English adjectives ending by –ic.

*E.g.*:

- arsenic acid - Acīdum arsenicīcum (Arsenicīum, i n → arsenic + ĭc + um);
- sulphuric acid - Acīdum sulfurīcum (Sulfur, ūris n → sulfur + ĭc + um);
- silicic acid - Acīdum silicīcum (Silicīum, i n → silic + ĭc + um);

b) Latin adjectives with the suffix -ōs and the ending -um correspond to English adjectives ending by –ous.
**E.g.:**

- **nitrous acid** - Acīdum nitrōsum (Nitrogenīum, i n → nitr + ōs + um);
- **sulphurous acid** - Acīdum sulfurōsum (Sulfur, ūris n → sulfur + ōs + um);
- **arsenicous acid** - Acīdum arsenicōsum (Arsenīcum, i n → arsenic + ōs + um).

c) Latin acid names with the prefix *hydro-* ending by -icūm correspond to English acid names with the prefix *hydro-* ending by -ic (Acīdum hydrochlo-ricūm – hydrochloric acid).

**Attention!!!** - Acid names used as drugs after pharmaceutical forms are written with the first capital letter:

**E.g.:**

- Tabulettae Acīdi folīci - tablets of folic acid
- Dragée Acīdi ascorbinīci - dragée of ascorbic acid

### III. LATIN NAMES OF OXIDES, PEROXIDES, HYDROXIDES

Latin names of oxides, peroxides and hydroxides consist of two words:

- **First one: name of a chemical element in Genitive**
- **Second one: word “oxydum” (oxide), “peroxydum” (peroxide) or “hydroxydum” (hydroxide) in Nominative.**

**E.g.:**

- Zincī oxydum - zinc oxide
- Ferri oxydum - ferric oxide
- Hydrogenīi peroxydum - hydrogen peroxide
- Calciī hydroxydum - calcium hydroxide

**Attention!!!** - Names of oxides, peroxides and hydroxides are written after pharmaceutical forms with the first capital letter:
E.g.:

- Solutio *Hydrogenii* peroxīdi dilūta – *diluted solution of hydrogen peroxide*

### IV. VOCABULARY

**Learn names of acids:**

1. acīdum acetīcum  
   acetic acid
2. acīdum acetylsalicylīcum  
   acetylsalicylic acid
3. acīdum ascorbinīcum  
   ascorbic acid
4. acīdum benzoīcum  
   benzoic acid
5. acīdum borīcum  
   boric acid
6. acīdum folīcum  
   folic acid
7. acīdum glutaminīcum  
   glutaminic acid
8. acīdum hydrochlorīcum  
   hydrochloric acid
9. acīdum hydrosulfurīcum  
   hydrosulfuric acid
10. acīdum lactīcum  
    lactic acid
11. acīdum lipoīcum  
    lipoic acid
12. acīdum nicotinīcum  
    nicotinic acid
13. acīdum nitrīcum  
    nitric acid
14. acīdum nitrōsum  
    nitrous acid
15. acīdum phosphorīcum  
    phosphoric acid
16. acīdum salicylīcum  
    salicylic acid
17. acīdum sulfurīcum  
    sulfuric acid
18. acīdum sulfurōsum  
    sulfurous acid

**Learn names of drugs:**

19. Camphŏra, ae f  
    camphora
20. Chinosŏlum, i n  
    chinosol
21. Chloroformīum, i n  
    chloroform
22. Coffĕīnum, i n  
    caffeine
23. Hydrocortisŏnum, i n  
    hydrocortison
24. Mentholum, i n  menthol
25. Naphthalänum, i n  naphtalan
26. Phthalazōlum, i n  phthalazol
27. Prednisolōnum, i n  prednisolon
28. Synoestrōlum, i n  synoestrol
29. Talcum, i n  talc
30. Tannīnum, i n  tannin

Other words:
31. albus, a, um  white
32. depurātus, a, um  clear
33. dilūtus, a, um  diluted
34. flavus, a, um  yellow

V. EXERCISES

Exercise 1. Translate from English into Latin:

Oily solution of camphora for external use; chloroform for narcosis; liniment of synthomycin with novocain; solution of prednisolon for injections; glyceric solution of ichthyol; spirituous solution of iodine for internal use; solution of novocain in ampoules, solution of nicotinic acid; mucilages of althea root, diluted hydrochloric acid; boric acid; tablets of lipoic acid; dragée of ascorbinic acid, zin c ointment; clear sulfur, yellow mercury oxide, acetylsalicylic acid in tablets, tablets of amidopyrin and phenacetin of each 0,25; phenoxy methylpenicillin for suspension; oily solution of synoestrol in ampoules, powder for suspensions; suppositories with dimedrol for children; diluted solution of hydrogen peroxide; hydrosulfuric acid; nicotinic acid in tablets; acetic acid; phosphoric acid; magnesium peroxide; zinc oxide; calcium hydroxide, hydrogen peroxide; benzoic acid.
Exercise 2. Translate the following prescriptions from English into Latin:

1) Take: Folic acid 0,0008  
Ascorbic acid 0,1  
Give of such doses number 30 in tablet form  
Write on a label:

2) Take: White mercurial ointment 5% - 25,0  
Let it be given  
Let it be labeled:

3) Take: Spirituous solution of salicylic acid 1% - 40 ml  
Give  
Write on a label:

4) Take: Acetylsalicylic acid  
Phenacetin of each 0,25  
Caffeine 0,05  
Give of such doses number 12 in a tablet form  
Write on a label:

5) Take: Ointment of hydrocortison 1% - 10,0  
Give  
Write on a label:

6) Take: Dragée of ascorbic acid 0,05 number 50  
Give  
Write on a label:

7) Take: Tablets of phthalazol 0,05 number 20
8) Take: Tincture of plantain leaves 10,0 - 20 ml
Give
Write on a label:

9) Take: Salicylic acid 5,0
Zinc oxide 0,5
Talc 50,0
Mix to make a powder
Let it be given
Let it be labeled:

10) Take: Yellow mercury oxide 0,6
Ichthyol 0,80
Ointment of zinc 20,0
Mix to make an ointment
Let it be given
Let it be labeled:

11) Take: Chloroform
Ethyl alcohol 95% - 20 ml
Ethyl ether 10 ml
Liquid ammonia 5 drops
Mix
Give
Write on a label:

12) Take: Clear sulfur
Magnesium oxide
Sacchar of each 10,0
Mix to make a powder
Give
Write on a label:

13) Take: Anaesthesin
Xeroform
Talc of each 10,0
Mix to make a powder
Give
Write on a label:

14) Take: Coated tablets of glutaminic acid 0,25 number 100
Give
Write on a label:

15) Take: Ichthyol 1,25
Zinc oxide
Wheat starch of each 12,5
Vaseline up to 50,0
Mix to make a paste
Give
Write on a label:

16) Take: Phenobarbital 0,03
Dimedrol 0,05
Analgin
Amidopyrin
Acetylsalicylic acid of each 0,15
Mix to make a powder
Give of such doses number 20.
Write on a label:

17) Take: Salicylic acid
   Menthol
   Synthomycin of each 2,5
   Ethyl alcohol 70%-50 ml
   Mix. Give.
   Write on a label:

18) Take: Diluted solution of hydrogen peroxide 10% - 30 ml
   Give.
   Write on a label.

19) Take: Menthol 0,1
   Zinc oxide
   Boric acid of each 0,5
   Vaseline 10,0
   Mix to make an ointment
   Give
   Write on a label:

20) Take: Benzoic acid 0,6
    Salicylic acid 0,3
    Vaseline 10,0
    Mix to make an ointment
    Give
    Write on a label:
21) Take: Boric acid 0,1
Chinosol 0,03
Tannin 0,06
Cocoa oil 2,0
Mix to make a vaginal suppository
Give of such doses number 10
Write on a label:

22) Take: Boric acid 5,0
Zinc oxide
Wheat starch of each 25,0
Ointment of naphthalan 45,0
Mix to make a paste
Give
Write on a label:
LESSON 6

LATIN NAMES OF SALTS IN PRESCRIPTIONS

In this lesson you will:

- Become familiar with the Latin names of salts used in prescriptions

This lesson is divided into the following sections:

I. Latin names of salts
II. Latin names of anions
III. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts
IV. Exercises.

I. LATIN NAMES OF SALTS

The salts names in Latin consist of two nouns:

- the name of **cation** comes first in *Genitive*,
- the name of **anion** occupies the second place and is in *Nominative*

**E.g.:**

- *Aluminii nitras* - aluminium nitrate
- *Adrenalini hydrochloridum* - adrenalin hydrochloride
- *Natrii nitris* - sodium nitrite

It is important to keep in mind that cation names in Latin are always written with the first capital letter and anion names are always written with the first small letter (*e.g.*: Solutio Natrii tetraboratis glycerinosae).

II. LATIN NAMES OF ANIONS

All Latin suffixes and endings of anion names in Nominative and Genitive are listed in the table:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin - Nominative</th>
<th>Latin - Genitive</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-as</td>
<td>Aluminī nitras</td>
<td>-ātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-is</td>
<td>Aluminī nitris</td>
<td>-ītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-īdum</td>
<td>Natriī chlorīdum</td>
<td>-īdi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Explanatory notes to the table:

- Anion names with the suffixes -as, -is are Latin nouns of the 3rd declension. The letter -s- in Latin names accords with the letter -t- in English names:

   * E.g:  
     - citras - citrate  
     - phosphas - phosphate  
     - nitris - nitrite  

- Genitive forms of anion names with suffixes -as-, -is- are formed by analogy with the nouns of the 3rd declension:

   * Compare:  
     - citras, ātis m - tuberosītas, ātis f  

- Anion names with the suffix -id- are Latin nouns of the 2nd declension:

   * E.g:  
     - chlorīdum, i n - chloride  
     - bromīdum, i n - bromide  

### III. TWO-COMPONENT NAMES OF POTASSIUM AND SODIUM SALTS

Two-component names of potassium and sodium are written with a hyphen and the both parts have the same grammatical case:

* E.g: sulphacyl sodium
• **Nominative:**  *Sulfacylum-natrīum*
• **Genitive:**  *Sulfacyli-natrīi*

### IV. VOCABULARY

*Learn names of drugs:*

1. Adrenalīnum, i n  
adrenalin
2. Aethylmorphēnum, i n  
aethylmorphine
3. Apomorphēnum, i n  
apomorphine
4. Barbitālum-natrīum, i n  
barbital-sodium
5. Benzylpenicillīnum-natrīum, i n  
benzylpenicillin-sodium
6. Codeīnum, i n  
codeine
7. Coffēīnum-natrīi benzōas,  
Coffēīni-natrīi benzoātis  
coffeine-sodium benzoate
8. Dicaīnum, i n  
dicain
9. Ephedrīnum, i n  
ephedrin
10. Methylēnum (i, n) coerulēum  
    (us, a, um)  
    blue methylen
11. Methylīi salicylas, ātis m  
methyl salicylate
12. Morphēnum, i n  
morphine
13. Norsulfazōlum, i n  
norsulfazol
14. Oleandomycīnīnum, i n  
oleandomycin
15. Olēum Helianthi (us, i m)  
sunflower-seeds oil
16. Olēum Persicōrum (um, i n)  
peach oil
17. Oxytetracyclīnīnum, i n  
oxytetracycline
18. Phenylīi salicylas, ātis m  
phenyl salicylate
19. Riboflavīnūm, i n  
riboflavin
20. Salicylas, ātis m  
salicylate
21. Sulfacylum-natrīum, i n  
sulfacyl-sodium
22. Testosterōnūm, i n  
testosteron
23. Thiamīnīnum, i n  
thiamin
Learn names of medicinal plants:

24. Adōnis (īdis m, f) vernālis spring adonis
   (is, e)

Other words:

25. isotonīcus, a, um isotonic

V. EXERCISES

Exercise 1. Translate from English into Latin:

Complex liniment of salicylate, isotonic solution of sodium chloride, tablets of calcium gluconate, coated tablets of tetracyclin hydrochloride, diluted solution of hydrogen peroxide, basic acetate of lead, powder of oxytetracyclin, matricary flowers for internal use, sodium hydrocitrate for injections, basic bismuth nitrate with belladonna extract, phenoxy methylpenicillin for injections, oily solution of synoestrol in ampoules, tincture of plantain leaves, milfoil herb, solution of mercury cyanide, tincture of matricary flowers, solution of sulfacyl-sodium in ampoules, solution of thiamin bromide, aloe syrup with iron, chloroform for narcosis; powder of foxglove leaves, granules of furazolidon, powder and tablets of phthivazid, oily solution of anaesthesin.

Exercise 2. Translate the following prescriptions from English into Latin:

1) Take:
   Blue methylen 0,5
   Solution of glucose 25% - 50 ml
   Give of such doses number 3 in ampoules
   Write on a label:

2) Take:
   Tincture of spring adonis herb 180 ml
   Amidopyrin 2,0
   Sodium bromide 4,0
   Codeine phosphate 0,2
   Mix. Give.
3) Take: Tincture of althea root 180 ml
Sodium hydrocarbonate
Sodium benzoate of each 5,0
Simple syrup 20,0
Mix. Give.
Write on a label:

4) Take: Tablets of tetracycline hydrochloride 0,1 number 30
Give
Write on a label:

5) Take: Suspension of hydrocortisone acetate 2,5% - 2 ml
Give of such doses number 5
Write on a label:

6) Take Dimedrol 0,01
Ephedrin hydrochloride 0,1
Peach oil 10 ml
Mint oil I drop
Mix
Give
Write on a label:

7) Take: Tablets of phthalazol 0,05 number 20
Give
Write on a label:

8) Take: Coated tablets of oleandomycin phosphate 0,125 number 25
Give
Write on a label:

9) Take:  Iodine 0,03
Iodide potassium 1,3
Glycerin 30,0
Peppermint oil III drops
Mix. Give.
Write on a label:

10) Take:  Ascorbic acid
Nicotinic acid of each 0,05
Riboflavin
Thiamine bromide of each 0,01
Sacchar 0,3
Mix to make a powder
Give of such doses number 30
Write on a label:

11) Take:  Analgin
Amidopyrin
Phenacetin of each 0,2
Coffeine sodium benzoate 0,02
Codeine phosphate 0,015
Give of such doses number 10 in a tablet form
Write on a label:

12) Take:  Methol 0,1
Phenyl salicylate 0,3
Vaseline oil up to 10 ml
Mix. Give.
Write on a label:

13) Take: Extract of belladonna 0,01
Basic bismuth nitrate
Phenyl salicylate of each 0,25
Mix to make a powder
Give of such doses number 10:
Write on a label:

14) Take: Chloroform
Sunflower-seed oil
Methyl salicylate of each 15 ml
Mix to make a liniment
Give
Write on a label:

15) Take: Magnesium carbonate 4,0
Potassium carbonate 5,0
Sodium hydrocarbonate 1,0
Glycerin in sufficient amount
Mix to make a paste
Give
Write on a label:

16) Take: Streptocid
Norsulfazol of each 3,0
Benzylpenicillin sodium 50 000 ED
Ephedrin hydrochloride
Acetylsalicylic acid of each 0,15
Mix to make a powder
Give
Write on a label:

17) Take:  Solution of dicain 0,5% - 5 ml
Solution of adrenalin hydrochloride 0,1% - III drops
Mix
Give
Write on a label:

18) Take:  Oily solution of testosteron propionate 1% - 1 ml
Give of such doses number 6 in ampoules
Write on a label.

19) Take:  Menthol
Ethylmorphin hydrochloride of each 0,01
Sacchar 0,03
Mix to make a powder
Give of such doses number 10
Write on a label:

20) Take:  Tincture of valerian root 200 ml
Sodium bromide 5,0
Sodium barbital 2,0
Ethylmorphin hydrochloride 0,15
Mix. Give.
Write on a label:
LESSON 7

SAMPLE FINAL TEST IN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

In this lesson you will:

- become familiar with a Final Test sample

Final Test in Pharmaceutical Terminology

V - 1

I. Translate the following prescriptions from English into Latin:

1) Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml
   Let it be given.
   Let it be labeled:

2) Take: Anaesthesin 2,5
   Talc 15,0
   Vaseline up to 50,0
   Mix to make a liniment
   Give.
   Write on a label:

3) Take: Tablets of Tetracycline with nystatin coated 100 000 ED
   number 25
   Give.
   Write on a label:

4) Take: Sulfadimezin
   Streptocid
   Synthomycin of each 1,0
   Mix to make a powder
   Give.
   Write on a label:

5) Take: Powder of ampicillin for suspensions 60,0
   Give in a dark phial
   Write on a label:

6) Take: Acetylsalicylic acid
   Phenacetin of each 0,25
Caffeine 0,05
Give of such doses number 12 in a tablet form
Write on a label:

7) Take:  Ichthyol 1,25
          Zinc oxide
          Wheat starch of each 12,5
          Vaseline up to 50,0
          Mix to make a paste
          Give.
          Write on a label:

8) Take:  Iodine 0,03
          Iodide potassium 1,3
          Glycerin 30,0
          Peppermint oil III drops
          Mix. Give.
          Write on a label:

9) Take:  Magnesium carbonate 4,0
          Potassium carbonate 5,0
          Sodium hydrocarbonate 1,0
          Glycerin in sufficient amount
          Mix to make a paste
          Give.
          Write on a label:

10) Take: Tincture of althea root 180 ml
       Sodium hydrocarbonate
       Sodium benzoate of each 5,0
       Simple syrup 20,0
       Mix. Give.
       Write on a label:

II. Find component elements carrying information about pharmaceutical
characteristics of the drug names, give their meaning:

Benzonalum, Dipheninium, Pyrimethaninum, Erythromycinum, Sulfathiazolum,
Sulfamethoxazolum, Vancomycinum, Diphenhydraminum, Cyclosporinum,
Cyanocobalaminum, Methyluracilum, Hydrolysin, Nitroglycerinum,
Benzobarbitalum, Methindionum, Mycoseptinum, Chlorochininum,
Cyclophosphamidum, Cerebrolysinum, Novosedum.
I. Syllabus

“Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology”

Two-semester course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weeks</th>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Amount of hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Introduction to the course “Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology”. Introduction to the course “Anatomical Terminology”. Phonetics: reading and pronunciation, part 1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Phonetics: reading and pronunciation, part 2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Accent rules, word stressing</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Adjective. Two groups of adjectives</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Degrees of comparison of adjectives</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Nominative plural of nouns and adjectives</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Genitive plural of nouns and adjectives</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>• Final test in “Anatomical Terminology”</td>
<td>1/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Introduction to the course “Clinical Terminology”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Clinical Terminology # 1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Clinical Terminology # 2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Clinical Terminology # 3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Clinical Terminology # 4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Clinical Terminology # 5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Clinical Terminology # 6</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Revision</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>• Final test in “Clinical Terminology”</td>
<td>1/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Introduction to the course “Pharmaceutical Terminology”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Students are asked to attend the lessons regularly and to be prepared for the lesson. They do hometask and study the vocabulary contained in single units.

The forms of control:
Regular attendance, the admissible absence is twice in a semester.

Conditions for granting the credit:
Active participation in lessons, preparedness for the lessons (vocabulary, hometask).

The final examination (after the 2nd semester) consists of:

- Written part
- Oral part
### II. Latin-English Anatomy Dictionary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abdōmen, īnis n</td>
<td>abdomen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accessorīus, a, um</td>
<td>additional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acromīon, i n</td>
<td>shoulder appendix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ala, ae f</td>
<td>wing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alāris, e</td>
<td>alar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alveolāris, e</td>
<td>alveolar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alveōlus, i m</td>
<td>alveole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anatomīcus, a, um</td>
<td>anatomical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angūlus, i m</td>
<td>angle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anterīor, īus</td>
<td>anterior, front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antrum, i n</td>
<td>cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anulāris, e</td>
<td>ring-shaped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aorta, ae f</td>
<td>main artery of body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aortīcus, a, um</td>
<td>aortic, aortal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apertūra, ae f</td>
<td>aperture, opening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apex, īcis m</td>
<td>apex, top, tip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appendix, īcis f</td>
<td>process, appendix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aquaeductus, us m</td>
<td>water duct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbor, āris f</td>
<td>arbor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arcus, us m</td>
<td>arch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arterīa, ae f</td>
<td>artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arteriōsus, a, um</td>
<td>arterial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>articulāris, e</td>
<td>articular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>articulatio, ōnis f</td>
<td>joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atrīum, i n</td>
<td>first chamber of the heart (atrium)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
auriculāris, e  auricular
auris, is f  ear

- B -

basis, is f  base
bifurcatiō, ōnis f  bifurcation
brachīum, i n  upper arm
brevis, e  short
bulbus, i m  bulb
bursa, ae f  pouch, sac

- C -
canalicūlus, i m  small canal
canālis, is m  canal
capillāris, e  capillary
capsūla, ae f  capsule, membrane or saclike structure
caput, ītis n  head
cardiācus, a, um  cardiac
carotīcus, a, um  carotid
cartilāgo, ūnis f  cartilage
cavernōsus, a, um  cavernous
cavītas, ātis f  cavity
cavum, i n  cavity
cavus, a, um  caval, hollow
centrālis, e  central
cerebellum, i n  cerebellum
cerēbrum, i n  brain
cervicālis, e  cervical
cervix, īcis f  neck
chiasma, ātis n  chiasm
chorda, ae f  cord
ciliāris, e  ciliary
cingūlum, i n  girdle
coccygēus, a, um  coccygeal
coccyx, ýgis m  coccyx, coccygeal bone
cochlěa, ae f  cochlea
cochleāris, e  cochlear
collum, i n  neck
columna, ae f  column
composītus, a, um  complex
concha, ae f  concha
cor, cordis n  heart
cornu, us n  horn; horn-shaped process
coronarĭus, a, um  coronary
corpus, ōritis n  body
cortex, ĭcis m  cortex
costa, ae f  rib
costālis, e  costal
craniālis, e  cranial
cranĭum, i n  skull
crista, ae f  crest
crus, cruris n  leg, crus
cutaněus, a, um  cutaneous
cutis, is f  skin

dens, dentis m  tooth
  •  dens canīnus  canine, cuspid tooth
  •  dens decidŭus  milk tooth
  •  dens incisīvus  incisor tooth
  •  dens molāris  molar tooth
• dens premolāris  premolar tooth
• dens sapientīae  wisdom tooth

(dens serotīnus)
dentālis, e  dental
dexter, tra, trum  right
digītus, i m  finger; toe
dorsālis, e  dorsal
dorsum, i n  back
ductus, us m  duct
durus, a, um  hard, solid

- E -
encephālon, i n  brain
ethmoidālis, e  sieve-shaped
extensor, ōris m  extensor

- F -
facīes, ĉi f  face, surface
fascīa, ae f  fascia
fibrōsus, a, um  fibrous
fibūla, ae f  fibula, splint-bone
fibulāris, e  fibular
fissūra, ae f  fissure, narrow slit
flavus, a, um  yellow
flexor, ōris m  flexor
forāmen, įinis n  opening
fornix, ĭcis m  fornix, arc
fossa, ae f  shallow depression or cavity
fovĕa, ae f  small pit or depression
foveōla, ae f  foveola
frontālis, e  frontal
- G -

gallus, i m  
cock

ganglīon, i n  
nervous node

gaster, tris f  
stomach

gastrīcus, a, um  
gastric

glandūla, ae f  
gland

glomus, ěris n  
glome, glomus

- H -

hepar, ātis n  
liver

horizontālis, e  
horizontal

hyoidēus, a, um  
sublingual, hypoglossal

- I -

iliācus, a, um  
iliac

impressīo, ōnis f  
impression

incisīvus, a, um  
incisive, cutting, sharp

incisūra, ae f  
incisure, slit or notch

inferīor, ĕus  
lower

interalveolāris, e  
interalveolar

intercostālis, e  
intercostal

interglobulāris, e  
interglobular

interlobulāris, e  
interlobular

internus, a, um  
internal

interradicalūris, e  
interradicular

interspinōsus, a, um  
interspinal

- J -

jugulāris, e  
jugular

jugum, i n  
eminence
- L -

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>labīum, i n</td>
<td>lip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labyrinthus, i m</td>
<td>labyrinth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lamīna, ae f</td>
<td>plate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laterālis, e</td>
<td>lateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latissīmus, a, um</td>
<td>widest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lien, ēnis m</td>
<td>spleen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ligamentum, i n</td>
<td>ligament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linēa, ae f</td>
<td>line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lingua, ae f</td>
<td>tongue, language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linguālis, e</td>
<td>lingual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lobātus, a, um</td>
<td>lobulose, lobulous, lobulated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lobus, i m</td>
<td>lobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longissīmus, a, um</td>
<td>longest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longitudinālis, e</td>
<td>longitudinal, lengthwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longus, a, um</td>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lumbālis, e</td>
<td>lumbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lymphaticus, a, um</td>
<td>lymphatic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- M -

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>magnus, a, um</td>
<td>large, great</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>major, jus</td>
<td>large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mamma, ae f</td>
<td>mammary gland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mandibūla, ae f</td>
<td>lower jaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mandibulāris, e</td>
<td>mandibular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>massa, ae f</td>
<td>mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masseterīcus, a, um</td>
<td>masticatory, chewing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mastoidēus, a, um</td>
<td>mammiform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mater, tris f</td>
<td>membrane of brain or spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxilla, ae f</td>
<td>upper jaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
maximus, a, um  largest
meatus, us m  passage
mediialis, e  medial
medius, a, um  middle
medulla ossium  (bone) marrow
medulla, ae f  medulla
membrana, ae f  membrane
membranaceus, a, um  membranous
membrum, i n  member, extremity
mentalis, e  mental
minus, a, um  smallest
minor, us  small
mobilitis, e  mobile
molaris, e  molar
musculus, i m  muscle

- N -
nasalis, e  nasal
nasus, i m  nose
nervosus, a, um  nervous
nervus, i m  nerve
nodulus, i m  nodulus
nodus, i m  node
nomen, inis n  name
nucha, ae f  nape of neck
nucleus, i m  spheroid body within a cell

- O -
obliterus, a, um  oblique
occipitalis, e  occipital
opticus, a, um  optic, visual
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Term</th>
<th>English Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>orbīta, ae f</td>
<td>eye-socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orbitālis, e</td>
<td>orbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os, oris n</td>
<td>mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os, ossis n</td>
<td>bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ossĕus, a, um</td>
<td>bony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostĭum, i n</td>
<td>mouth, aperture, opening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ovālis, e</td>
<td>oval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palatīnus, a, um</td>
<td>palatine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palātum, i n</td>
<td>palate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palpēbra, ae f</td>
<td>eyelid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pancrēas, ātis n</td>
<td>pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>papilla, ae f</td>
<td>papilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parīes, ētis m</td>
<td>wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parietālis, e</td>
<td>parietal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pars, partis f</td>
<td>part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, a, um</td>
<td>little, small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pectorālis, e</td>
<td>pectoral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pedicūlus, i m</td>
<td>pedicle, small foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pelvis, is f</td>
<td>pelvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peron(a)eus, a, um</td>
<td>fibular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petrōsus, a, um</td>
<td>stony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pharyngēus, a, um</td>
<td>pharyngeal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pharynx, ĭngis m</td>
<td>pharynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pius, a, um</td>
<td>soft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleurālis, e</td>
<td>pleural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plexus, us m</td>
<td>network; chiefly of veins and nerves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plica, ae f</td>
<td>fold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porta, ae f</td>
<td>entry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
posterius, us m
procesus, us m
profundus, a, um
pye-roides, a, um
pulmonalis, e
pyloricus, e
rectalis, e
renalis, e
regio, ōnis f
ramus, i m
radix, ōnis m
raphe, es f
red, ruber, ba, brum
round, rotundus, a, um
region, ōnis f
rectal, rectalis, e
region, ōnis f
renal, renalis, e
retinaculum, i
retina, ae f
renalis, e
ren, renis m
rotundus, a, um
pterygoideus, a, um
lung, pulmo, ōnis m
pulmonalis, e
pyloricus, e
pyloric
pyloric
stair-shaped, scalenus, a, um
shoulder blade, scapula, ae f
saddle, sella, ae f
sagittal
sanguineus, a, um
sanguis, ōnis m
scaleneus, a, um
scapula, ae f
septum, i n
semilunar, semilunaris, e
shoulder-blade, scapula, ae f
semilunar
sagittal
sanguineous
sagittal
sanguineous
sagittal
sanguineous
sagittal
sanguineous
sagittal
sanguineous
serrātus, a, um  | serrate
simplex, ĭcis  | simple
sinister, tra, trum  | left
sinus, us m  | hollow curvature or cavity
sinusoidēus, a, um  | sinusoid
skelēton, i n  | skeleton
spatium, i n  | space
sphenoidālis, e  | wedge-shaped, sphenoid
spina, ae f  | spine
spīnālis, e  | spinal
spinōsus, a, um  | spinous
sternālis, e  | sternal
stroma, ātis n  | stroma
sublinguālis, e  | sublingual
sulcus, i m  | furrow or groove
superficiālis, e  | superficial
superiōr, īus  | higher, upper
suprēmus, a, um  | highest
sutūra, ae f  | suture; line of junction
synchondrōsis, is f  | synchondrosis
synoviālis, e  | synovial
systēma, ātis n  | system

- T -

talus, i m  | ankle bone, talus
tegmen, ĭnis n  | roof
temporālis, e  | temporal
tendo, īnis m  | tendon
thoracīcus, a, um  | thoracic
thorax, ācīs m  | chest
thymus, i m  thymus
thyreoidēus, a, um  thyroid
tibia, ae f  shinebone, larger of two bones of leg
tibiālis, e  tibial
tonsilla, ae f  tonsil
transversus, a, um  transverse
trigeminālis, e  trigeminal
trochanter, ēris m  trochanter
trochleāris, e  trochlear
truncus, i m  trunk
tuber, ēris n  large rounded swelling
tubercūlum, i n  tubercle; small rounded swelling
tuberosītas, ātis f  tuberosity
tympanīcus, a, um  tympanic
tympānum, i n  tympanum

- V -
vagīna, ae f  sheath, vagina
valvūla, ae f  small valva; valve
vas, vasis n  vessel
vena, ae f  vein
venōsus, a, um  venous
vertēbra, ae f  vertebra
vertebrālis, e  vertebral
vestibūlum, i n  vestibule
vita, ae f  life
vomer, ēris m  vomer

- Z -
zygomaticus, a, um  zygomatic
III. English- Latin Anatomy Dictionary

-A-

abdomen    abdōmen, ĭnis n
additional accessorīus, a, um
alar        alāris, e
alveolar    alveolāris, e
anterior    anterior, ĭus
aortic, aortal aortīcus, a, um
apex, top, tip apex, ìcis m
arterial    arteriōsus, a, um

-B-

back        posterīor, ĭus
bifurcation bifurcatio, ōnis f
blood       sanguis, ĭnis m
blood, sanguinerous sanguinēus, a, um
brain       cerēbrum, i n; encephālon, i n

-C-

canine, cuspid tooth dens (dentis m)canīnus (us, a, um)
capillary   capillāris, e
cardiac     cardiācus, a, um
carotid     carotīcus, a, um
cartilage   cartilāgo, ĭnis f
caval, hollow cavus, a, um
cavernous    cavernōsus, a, um
cavity      antrum, i n; cavum, i n;
central     centrālis, e
cerebellum  cerebellum, i n
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Latin Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cervical</td>
<td>cervicālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chest</td>
<td>thorax, ācis m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chiasm</td>
<td>chiasma, ātis n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ciliary</td>
<td>ciliāris, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coccygeal</td>
<td>coccygēus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coccyx, coccygeal bone</td>
<td>coccyx, ygis m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cochlea</td>
<td>cochlēa, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cochlear</td>
<td>cochleāris, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column</td>
<td>columna, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complex</td>
<td>composītus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concha</td>
<td>concha, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constrictor muscle</td>
<td>muscūlus (i m) constrictor (ōris m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cord</td>
<td>chorda, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coronary</td>
<td>coronarīus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cortex</td>
<td>cortex, īcis m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>costal</td>
<td>costālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cranial</td>
<td>craniālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crest</td>
<td>crīsta, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crus</td>
<td>crus, cruris n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cutaneous</td>
<td>cutanēus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deep</td>
<td>profundus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dental</td>
<td>dentālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depressor muscle</td>
<td>muscūlus (i m) depressor (ōris m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dorsal</td>
<td>dorsālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duct</td>
<td>ductus, us m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ear</td>
<td>auris, is f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eminence</td>
<td>jugum, i n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
entry    porta, ae f
extensor    extensor, ōris m
extensor muscle    muscūlus (i m) extensor (ōris m)
extremity    membrum, i n
eyelid    palpēbra, ae f
eye-socket    orbīta, ae f

-F-

face    facīes, ēi f
fascia    fascīa, ae f
fibrous    fibrōsus, a, um
fibula, splint-bone    fibūla, ae f
fibular    fibulāris, e; peron(a)eus, a, um
finger; toe    digītus, i m
first chamber of the heart    atrīum, i n
(atrium)
fissure, narrow slit    fissūra, ae f
flexor    flexor, ōris m
fold    plica, ae f
fornix, arc    fornix, ĭcis m
foveola    foveōla, ae f
front    anterīor, ĭus
frontal    frontālis, e
furrow or groove    sulcus, i m

-G-
gastric    gastrīcus, a, um
girdle    cingūlum, i n
gland    glandūla, ae f
glome, glomus    glomus, ěris n
-H-

hard, solid  durus, a, um
head  caput, ītis n
heart  cor, cordis n
higher  superīor, īus
highest  suprēmus, a, um
hollow or cavity  sinus, us m
horizontal  horizontālis, e
horn; horn-shaped process  cornu, us n

-I-

iliac  iliācus, a, um
impression  impressiō, ōnis f
incisive, cutting, sharp  incisīvus, a, um
incisor tooth  dens (denti m) incisīvus (us, a, um)
incisure, slit or notch  incisūra, ae f
interalveolar  interalveolāris, e
intercostal  intercostālis, e
interglobular  interglobulāris, e
interlobular  interlobulāris, e
internal  internus, a, um
interradicular  interrupturālis, e
interspinal  interspinōsus, a, um

-J-

joint  articulatio, ōnis f
jugular  jugulāris, e

-K-

kidney  ren, renīs m
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>labyrinth</td>
<td>labyrinthus, i m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large</td>
<td>major, jus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large rounded swelling</td>
<td>tuber, ēris n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large, great</td>
<td>magnūs, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>largest</td>
<td>maxīmus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lateral</td>
<td>laterālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left</td>
<td>sinīster, tra, trum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leg, crus</td>
<td>crus, cruris n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>levator muscle</td>
<td>muscŭlus (i m) levātor (ōris m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life</td>
<td>vita, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ligament</td>
<td>ligamentum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line</td>
<td>linēa, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lingual</td>
<td>linguālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lip</td>
<td>labīum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little, small</td>
<td>parvus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liver</td>
<td>hepar, ātis n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lobe</td>
<td>lobus, i m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lobulose, lobulous, lobulated</td>
<td>lobātus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>longus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longest</td>
<td>longissīmus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longitudinal, lengthwise</td>
<td>longitudinālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lower</td>
<td>inferīor, īus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lower jaw</td>
<td>mandibūla, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lumbar</td>
<td>lumbālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lung</td>
<td>pulmo, ōnis m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lymphatic</td>
<td>lymphāticus, a, um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
-M-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>main artery of body</td>
<td>aorta, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mammary gland</td>
<td>mamma, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mammiform</td>
<td>mastoidēus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mandibular</td>
<td>mandibulāris, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mass</td>
<td>massa, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masticatory, chewing</td>
<td>masseterīcus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medial</td>
<td>mediālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medulla</td>
<td>medulla, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>member, extremity</td>
<td>membrum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membrane</td>
<td>membrāna, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membrane of brain or spinal</td>
<td>mater, tris f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cord</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membranous</td>
<td>membranacēus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mental</td>
<td>mentālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle</td>
<td>medīus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milk tooth</td>
<td>dens (dentis m) decidūus (us, a, um)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobile</td>
<td>mobīlis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molar</td>
<td>molāris, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molar tooth</td>
<td>dens (dentis m) molāris(is, e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>os, oris n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth, aperture, opening</td>
<td>ostium, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muscle</td>
<td>muscūlus, i m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-N-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Latin Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>nomen, īnis n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nape of neck</td>
<td>nucha, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasal</td>
<td>nasālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neck</td>
<td>cervix, īcis f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nerve</td>
<td>nervus, i m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nervous</td>
<td>nervōsus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nervous node</td>
<td>ganglion, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>network; chiefly of veins and</td>
<td>plexus, us m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nerves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>node</td>
<td>nodus, i m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nodulus</td>
<td>nodūlus, i m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nose</td>
<td>nasus, i m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oblique</td>
<td>oblīquus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occipital</td>
<td>occipitālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opening</td>
<td>forāmen, īnis n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optic, visual</td>
<td>opticus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orbital</td>
<td>orbitālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oval</td>
<td>ovālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palate</td>
<td>palātum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palatine</td>
<td>palatinus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pancreas</td>
<td>pancreās, ātis n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>papilla</td>
<td>papilla, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parietal</td>
<td>parietālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>pars, partis f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partition, dividing wall</td>
<td>septum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passage</td>
<td>meātus, us m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pectoral</td>
<td>pectorālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pedicle, small foot</td>
<td>pedicūlus, i m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pelvis</td>
<td>pelvis, is f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pertaining to buttocks</td>
<td>glutaeus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pharyngeal</td>
<td>pharyngēus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pharynx</td>
<td>pharynx, yngis m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
plate lamīna, ae f
pleural pleurālis, e
pouch, sac bursa, ae f
premolar tooth dens (dentis m) premolāris (is, e)
process, appendix processus, us m; appendix, īcis f
pulmonary pulmonālis, e
pyloric pylorīcus, e

rectal rectālis, e
red ruber, bra, brum
region regio, ōnis f
renal renālis, e
retina retīna, ae f
retinaculum retinacūlum, i n
rib costa, ae f
right dexter, tra, trum
ring-shaped anulāris, e
roof tegmen, īnis n
root, radix radix, īcis f
rotator muscle muscūlus (i m) rotātor (ōris m)
round rotundus, a, um

saddle sella, ae f
sagital sagittālis, e
semilunar semilunāris, e
serrate serrātus, a, um
shallow depression or cavity fossa, ae f
sheath vagīna, ae f
shinebone, larger of two tibīa, ae f
bodies of leg
short
shoulder appendix
shoulder-blade
sieve-shaped
simple
sinusoid
skeleton
skin
skull
small
small pit or depression
small valva; valve
smallest
soft
space
spheroid body within a cell
spinal
spine
spinous
spleen
stairs-shaped
sternal
stomach
stony
stroma
sublingual
superficial
surface
suture; line of junction
synchondrosis, is f
synovial, e
system, ātis n

- T -
temporal, e
tendon, Įnis m
tensor muscle, muscūlus (i m) tensor (ōris m)
thicker and shorter bone of, radīus, i m
forearm
thoracic, a, um
thymus, i m
thyroid, a, um
tibial, Ėris m
tongue, language, lingua, ae f
tonsil, tonsilla, ae f
tooth, dens, dentis m
transverse, a, um
trigeminal, e
trochanter, Ėris m
trochlear, Ėris m
trunk, truncus, i m
tubercle; small rounded, tubercūlum, i n
swelling

- U -
tuberosity, ātis f
tympanic, a, um
tympanum, i n

upper, Įus
upper arm, brachīum, i n
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Latin Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>upper jaw</td>
<td>maxilla, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vein</td>
<td>vena, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venous</td>
<td>venōsus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vertebra</td>
<td>vertēbra, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vertebral</td>
<td>vertebrālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vessel</td>
<td>vas, vasis n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vestibule</td>
<td>vestibūlum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vomer</td>
<td>vomer, ěris m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wall</td>
<td>parīes, ētis m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water duct</td>
<td>aquaeductus, us m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wedge-shaped, sphenoid</td>
<td>sphenoidālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>widest</td>
<td>latissīmus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wing</td>
<td>ala, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wing-shaped, pterygoid</td>
<td>pterygoidēus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wisdom tooth</td>
<td>dens (dentis m) sapientīae (a, ae f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(dens serotīnus (us, a, um))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>flavus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zygomatic</td>
<td>zygomaticicus, a, um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### VI. Greek & Latin-English Clinical Dictionary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek &amp; Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acheilia</td>
<td>acheilia</td>
<td>lack of lips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acrocyanōsis</td>
<td>acrocyanosis</td>
<td>blue coloration of the distal parts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adenītis</td>
<td>adenitis</td>
<td>inflammation of a gland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adenocytus</td>
<td>adenocyte</td>
<td>glandular cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adenōma</td>
<td>adenoma</td>
<td>benign epithelial tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adenomyōma</td>
<td>adenomyoma</td>
<td>benign tumour from smooth muscles with glandular elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adenopathia</td>
<td>adenopathy</td>
<td>tumour or enlargement of lymph glands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adenotomia</td>
<td>adenotomy</td>
<td>removal of adenoids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adentia</td>
<td>adentia</td>
<td>lack of teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anaemia</td>
<td>anemia</td>
<td>deficiency of the blood in quality or quantity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anaesthesia</td>
<td>anesthesia</td>
<td>absence of feelings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angīítis</td>
<td>angiitis</td>
<td>inflammation of blood vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angiocardio grammα</td>
<td>angiocardiogram</td>
<td>results of X-ray examination of heart blood vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angiocardio graphia</td>
<td>angiocardiography</td>
<td>X-ray recording of the heart and vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angiocholecystītis</td>
<td>angiocholecystitis</td>
<td>inflammation of gallbladder vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angiogramma</td>
<td>angiogram</td>
<td>results of blood vessel X-ray examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angiographia</td>
<td>angiography</td>
<td>X-ray recording of vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angiologia</td>
<td>angiology</td>
<td>study of blood vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angiōma</td>
<td>angioma</td>
<td>benign tumour composed of blood vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angiomatōsis</td>
<td>angiomatosis</td>
<td>multiple vessel tumours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angiopathia</td>
<td>angiopathy</td>
<td>disease of blood vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anophthalmia</td>
<td>anophthalmia</td>
<td>lack of eye balls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
anuria: complete suppression of urine secretion in the kidney
aphagia: inability to swallow
aphonia: loss of voice
aplasia: abnormal formation or development
arthralgia: feeling of pain in the joint
arthritis: inflammation of the joint
arthrochondritis: inflammation of the joint and cartilage
arthropathia: disease of joints
arthrophthalmpathia: disease of joints and eyes
arthroplastica: plastic surgery of the joint
arthrosis: any disease of joints
arthrotomia: cutting (incision) of the joint
atrichia: lack of hair
atrophia: decrease in size or wasting away of a cell, tissue, organ or part

-b-
bilaterālis: on both sides
biologia: study of life
biopsia: removal of a segment of living tissue for pathological examination
bradyaesthesia: slowing of transmittence of sensoric feelings
bradyarrhythmia: disturbance of the heart activity (slowing)
bradycardia: abnormally slow heart action (slow pulse)
bradyglossia: slowing of tongue movements
bradykinesia: slowing of movements
bradyphagia: slowing of swallowing
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cancerophobia</td>
<td>fear of cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardiologia</td>
<td>study of the heart and heart function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardiomegalia</td>
<td>enlargement of the heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardiomyoplegia</td>
<td>palsy (paralysis) of the heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardiopathia</td>
<td>disease of the heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardiophobia</td>
<td>fear of heart diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardiotomia</td>
<td>cutting (incision) of the heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cephalgia (cephalalgia)</td>
<td>head pain (headache)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cephalhaematōma</td>
<td>blood clot in the brain of newborn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cephalomegalia</td>
<td>increased size of the head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cephalopathia</td>
<td>disease of the brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cephalotomia</td>
<td>cutting (incision) of the brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheilitis</td>
<td>inflammation of lips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheilorrhagia</td>
<td>bleeding from the lip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheilōsis</td>
<td>any disease of lips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholecystectomy</td>
<td>removal of the gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholecystitis</td>
<td>inflammation of the gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholecystogramma</td>
<td>results of gallbladder X-ray examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholecystographia</td>
<td>X-ray recording of the gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholecystopathia</td>
<td>disease of the gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholecystopexia</td>
<td>fixation of the gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholecystoscopia</td>
<td>internal examination of the gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholecystostōma</td>
<td>artificial opening of the gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholecystostomia</td>
<td>creation of an artificial opening of the gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholecystotomia</td>
<td>cutting of the gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholelithiāsis</td>
<td>disease with the presence of stones in the gallbladder and its ducts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chondrītis</td>
<td>inflammation of cartilages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chondrodystrophia</td>
<td>disturbance of cartilage nutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chondrogēnus</td>
<td>developing from the cartilaginous tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chondrōma</td>
<td>benign tumour from cartilaginous tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chondropathia</td>
<td>disease of cartilages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chondrosteodystrophia</td>
<td>disturbance of cartilaginous and bone tissues nourishment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chondrotomia</td>
<td>cutting (incision) of the cartilage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colostomia</td>
<td>creation of an artificial opening of the colon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colpītis</td>
<td>inflammation of the vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colpopexia</td>
<td>fixation of the vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colposcopia</td>
<td>internal examination of the vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colpotomia</td>
<td>cutting of the vagina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyanodermia</td>
<td>blue coloration of the skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyanopsia</td>
<td>disturbance of vision: vision only in blue colour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyanōsis</td>
<td>blueness of the skin caused by the deficiency of oxygen and the excess of carbon dioxide in the blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyanuria</td>
<td>violet coloration of the urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cystectomia</td>
<td>removal of the urinary bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cystītis</td>
<td>inflammation of the urinary bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cystogramma</td>
<td>results of urinary bladder X-ray examination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|cystographia| X-ray recording of the
cystopexia  cystopexy  fixation of the bladder

cystoplegia  cystoplegia  palsy (paralysis) of the bladder

cystopyelogramma  cystopyelogram  results of urinary bladder and renal pelvis X-ray examination

cystopyelographia  cystopyelography  X-ray recording of urinary bladder and renal pelvis internal examination of the urinary bladder

cystoscopia  cystoscopy  internal examination of the urinary bladder

cystostomia  cystostomy  creation of an artificial opening of the urinary bladder

cystotomia  cystotomy  cutting (incision) of the urinary bladder

cytogramma  cytogram  results of cell microscopic examination

cytologia  cytology  study of a cell

cytopenia  cytopenia  decrease in the number of cells in the blood

cytoscopia  cytoscopy  microscopic examination of the cell

-D-

dacryoadenalgia  dacryoadenalgia  feeling of pain in the tear gland

dacryoadenitis  dacryoadenitis  inflammation of the tear gland

dacryocystectomy  dacryocystectomy  removal of the tear sac

dacryocystitis  dacryocystitis  inflammation of the tear sac

dacryocystogramma  dacryocystogram  results of tear sac X-ray examination

dacryopyorrhea  dacryopyorrhea  purulent discharge from the tear gland

dactylalgia  dactylalgia  feeling of pain in the fingers or toes

dactylomegaly  (megalodactyly)  enlargement of fingers or toes

dactylomegalia  (megalodactylia)  enlargement of fingers or toes

dermatitis  dermatitis  inflammation of the skin

dermatologia  dermatology  study of skin diseases
dermatoma  
tumour of the skin

dermatoscopy  
internal examination of the skin

dermatosis  
any disease of the skin

dicheilia  
double lip

didactylia  
double finger (toe)
diplegia  
bilateral palsy (paralysis)
diplopia  
double vision

dysenteria  
painful intestines
dyskeratosis  
malfunction of the cornea
dyskinesia  
disturbance of movements
dysopia  
disturbance of vision
dysphagia  
difficulty in swallowing
dysphonia  
disturbance of voice formation
dysplasia  
abnormal development
dystrophia  
abnormal nourishment; disturbance of nourishment
dysuria  
difficult or painful urination

electrocardiogramma  
recording of electrical activity of heartbeats

electrocardiographia  
recording of activity and location of the heart
encephalitis  
inflammation of the brain and meninges
encephalogramma  
recording of electrical activity of the brain
encephalographia  
recording of the brain
encephalomyelitis  
inflammation of the brain and spinal cord
encephalopathy  
disease of the brain
endocarditis  
inflammation of heart inner coat
endocardium  
endothelial (inner) lining of the heart
endogenous  
normally occurring or existing within the body
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>endometritis</td>
<td>inflammation of uterine mucous coat</td>
<td>endophthalmitis</td>
<td>inflammation of internal eye coat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endophthalmitis</td>
<td>inflammation of internal eye coat</td>
<td>endoscopy</td>
<td>internal examination of mucous coat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endosteum</td>
<td>medullary membrane of the bone</td>
<td>enteritis</td>
<td>inflammation of the intestines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enterolithus</td>
<td>intestinal stone</td>
<td>enteropathy</td>
<td>disease of the small intestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enteropathia</td>
<td>disease of the small intestine</td>
<td>enteropexy</td>
<td>fixation of the small intestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enterorrhagia</td>
<td>small intestine bleeding</td>
<td>enterorrhaphy</td>
<td>suturing of the small intestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enterorrhaphia</td>
<td>suturing of the small intestine</td>
<td>enterostomia</td>
<td>creation of an artificial opening of the small intestine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erythema</td>
<td>redness of the skin produced by congestion of the capillaries</td>
<td>erythroaemia</td>
<td>disease with increasing of red blood cell count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erythrocytosis</td>
<td>increased count of red blood cells in the blood</td>
<td>erythrocyturia</td>
<td>discharge of erythrocytes by urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erythrocytus</td>
<td>red blood cell</td>
<td>erythrodermia</td>
<td>skin inflammation with reddening, itching and desquamation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erythrodermia</td>
<td>skin inflammation with reddening, itching and desquamation</td>
<td>erythrokeratoderma</td>
<td>disease accompanied by redness of horny skin layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erythropenia</td>
<td>decreased number of erythrocytes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gastralgia</td>
<td>feeling of pain in the stomach (stomachache)</td>
<td>gastrectomia</td>
<td>removal of the stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gastritis</td>
<td>inflammation of stomach lining</td>
<td>gastrocolostomia</td>
<td>creation of an artificial opening between stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gastrocolostomia</td>
<td>creation of an artificial opening between stomach</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
gastroduodenostomia gastroduodenostomy creation of an artificial opening between stomach and duodenum

gastroenteritis gastroenteritis inflammation of stomach and small intestine

gastroenterologia gastroenterology study of stomach and small intestine

gastroenterostomia gastroenterostomy creation of an artificial opening between stomach and small intestine

gastroesophagostomia gastroesophagostomy creation of an artificial opening between stomach and esophagus

gastrogēnus gastrogenous, gastrogenic developing from the stomach

gastropexia gastropexy fixation of the stomach

gastrorrhagia gastrorrhagia stomach bleeding

gastroscopia gastroscopy internal examination of the stomach

gastrostōma gastrostoma artificial stomach opening

gastrostomia gastrostomy creation of an artificial stomach opening

gastrotomia gastrotomy cutting of the stomach

glossalgia glossalgia feeling of pain in the tongue

glossītis glossitis inflammation of the tongue

glossopathia glossopathy disease of the tongue

glossoplastica glossoplasty plastic surgery of the tongue

glossoplegia glossoplegia palsy (paralysis) of the tongue

glossorrhagia glossorrhagia bleeding from the tongue

glossorrhaphia glossorrhaphy suturing of the tongue

glossotomia glossotomy cutting of the tongue

glossotrichia glossotrichia hairy tongue

glucosuria glucosuria abnormal presence of glucose (sugar) in the urine

glykaemia glycemia presence of glucose (sugar) in the blood
the branch of medicine that treats diseases of the genital tract in women
disease of the genital tract in women
aversion to women

- **H** -

- **haemangiōma** - hemangioma: benign tumour from blood vessels
- **haemarthrōsis** - hemarthrosis: accumulation of blood in the joint cavity
- **haematogēnus** - hematogenic: developing from blood
- **haematologia** - hematology: study of blood and blood-forming tissue
- **haematōma** - hematoma: mass of coagulated blood (internal or under the skin)
- **haematometra** - hematometra: accumulation of blood in the uterine cavity
- **haematuria** - hematuria: blood in the urine
- **haemogramma** - hemogram: results of blood examination
- **haemopericardium** - hemopericardium: accumulation of blood in the pericardium
- **haemophthalmus** - hemophthalmus: accumulation of blood in the eye
- **haemorrhagia** - hemorrhagia: bleeding
- **haemotherapia** - hemotherapy: treatment by using the blood
- **haemothorax** - hemothorax: accumulation of blood in the thoracic cavity
- **hepatolithus** - hepatolith: hepatic stone
- **heterogēnus** - heterogenic: of different kind or type
- **histologia** - histology: microscopic study of tissues
- **histōma** - histoma: benign tumour from the tissue
- **histopathologia** - histopathology: microscopic study of tissues injured by the disease
- **histotherapia** - histotherapy: treatment by the introduction of tissue
- **homogēnus** - homogenic: of the same kind or type
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hydraemia</td>
<td>hydremia</td>
<td>increased blood volume due to increased plasma volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydarthrōsis</td>
<td>hydralrthenosis</td>
<td>accumulation of fluid in the joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrocephalia</td>
<td>hydrocephaly</td>
<td>accumulation of fluid in the skull (water in the brain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrocholecystus</td>
<td>hydrocholecystis</td>
<td>accumulation of fluid in the gallbladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrologia</td>
<td>hydrology</td>
<td>study of water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrometra</td>
<td>hydrometra</td>
<td>accumulation of fluid in the uterine cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydromyelia</td>
<td>hydromyelia</td>
<td>accumulation of fluid in the spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydronephrōsis</td>
<td>hydrenephrosis</td>
<td>enlargement and distention of the kidney due to block of urine outflow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydropericardium</td>
<td>hydropericardium</td>
<td>accumulation of fluid in the pericardial cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydroperitoneum</td>
<td>hydroperitoneum</td>
<td>accumulation of fluid in the abdominal cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrophobia</td>
<td>hydrophobia</td>
<td>fear of water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrophthalmus</td>
<td>hydrophthalmos</td>
<td>accumulation of fluid in the eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydropneumothonax</td>
<td>hydropneumothonax</td>
<td>accumulation of gas and fluid in the pleural cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrrrhoea</td>
<td>hydrrrhoa</td>
<td>discharge of water from the tissues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrotherapia</td>
<td>hydrotherapy</td>
<td>use of water in the treatment of disease or injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrothorax</td>
<td>hydrothorax</td>
<td>accumulation of noninfectious watery fluid in the pleural cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyperaemia</td>
<td>hyperemia</td>
<td>excessive presence of blood in the part or organ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyperkeratōsis</td>
<td>hyperkeratosis</td>
<td>abnormal thickening of cornea or horny skin layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyperlipaemia</td>
<td>hyperlipemia</td>
<td>an excess of lipids (fats) in the blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypermastia</td>
<td>hypermastia</td>
<td>abnormal increase of the breast in size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypernephrōma</td>
<td>hypernephroma</td>
<td>abnormal enlargement of kidney tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyperplasia</td>
<td>hyperplasia</td>
<td>abnormal increase in size of a tissue or an organ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyperthermia</td>
<td>hyperthermia</td>
<td>elevation of temperature</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
hyperthyreōsis  hyperthyreosis  decreased function of the thyroid gland
hypertrichōsis  hypertrichosis  abnormal growth of hair
hypertrophia  hypertrophy  abnormal enlargement of a part or organ
hypogastrium  hypogastric  under the stomach, pertaining to the lower middle abdomen
hypoglossus  hypoglossal; sublingual  situated under the tongue
hypoglykaemia  hypoglykemia  deficiency of glucose in the blood
hypokinesia  hypokinesia  small quantity of movements
hypoplasia  hypoplasia  incomplete development of an organ or a tissue
hypothermia  hypothermia  decreasing of temperature
hypothyreōsis  hypothyreosis  increased function of the thyroid gland
hypotrophia  hypotrophy  abnormal decrease in size of a part or an organ
hypovitaminōsis  hypovitaminosis  deficiency of vitamins in the organism
hysterectomia  hysterectomy  removal of the uterus
hysteropathia  hysteropathy  disease of the uterus
hysteropexia  hysteropexy  fixation of the uterus
hysterorrhagia  hysterorrhagia  uterine bleeding
hysterorrhaphia  hysterorrhaphy  suturing of the uterus
hysterotomia  hysterotomy  cutting of the uterus

- K -
keratectomia  keratectomy  removal of the eye cornea
kerātētis  keratitis  inflammation of the eye cornea
keratōma  keratoma  tumour of the eye cornea
keratōsis  keratosis  any disease of the eye cornea
keratotomia  keratotomy  cutting of the eye cornea
kinesiologia  kinesiology  study of body movements
kinesitherapia  kinesitherapy  treatment by motor regimen
kinetōsis  kinetosis  disease caused by passive movements

-L-
leukaemia  leukemia  malignant disease of blood-forming organs
leucocytōsis  leucocytosis  increased count of white blood cells in the blood
leucocytes  leucocyte  white blood cell
leucoderma  leucoderma  appearing of white spots on the skin
leucogramma  leucogram  results of leucocytes studying
leucōma  leukemia  tumour of white tissue
leucopenia  leucopenia  decrease in the number of leukocytes in the blood
leucorrhoea  leucorrhea  whitish or yellowish viscid discharge from vagina or uterus
lipaemia  lipemia  decreased number of lipids in the blood
lipatrophia  lipatrophy  absence of fat tissue nourishment
lipodystrophia  lipodystrophy  disturbance of the fat tissue nourishment
lipofibrōma  lipofibroma  benign tumour composed of fibrous tissue with lipocytes
lipogēnus  lipogenic  producing fat
lipōma  lipoma  benign tumour composed of fatty tissues
lipopenia  lipopenia  decrease in the number of lipids
lipuria  lipuria  lipid excretion by urine
lymphadenētis  lymphadenitis  inflammation of lymph nodes

-M-
macrocephalia  macrocephaly  large skull and large amount of brain tissue
macrocheilia  macrocheilia  excessive enlargement of lips
macroglossia  macroglossia  large tongue
macromastia  macromastia  large breast
mammogramma | mammogram | results of breast X-ray examination
mammographia | mammography | X-ray recording of the breast
mastectomia | mastectomy | removal of the breast
mastitis | mastitis | inflammation of the breast
mastomegalia | mastomegaly | enlargement of the breast
mastopathia | mastopathy | disease of the breast
melanodermia | melanoderma | dark pigment in the skin
melanōma | melanoma | dark pigment in a tumour
melanōsis | melanosis | excessive tissues (or organs) pigmentation caused by melanin deposits
melanuria | melanuria | dark pigment excreted in the urine
metrectomia | metrectomy | removal of the uterus
metrītis | metritis | inflammation of the uterus
metrographia | metrography | X-ray recording of the uterus
metropathia | metropathy | disease of the uterus
metropexia | metropexy | fixation of the uterus
metrorrhagia | metrorrhagia | uterine bleeding
metrotomia | metrotomy | cutting of the uterus
microcephalia | microcephaly | small skull and small amount of brain tissue
microencephalia | microencephaly | congenitally small skull and small amount of brain tissue
microgastria | microgastria | small stomach
microglossia | microglossia | small tongue
micromastia | micromastia | small breast
microphthalmia | microphthalmia | small size of the eye
microphonia | microphonia | subsided sound on external examination (on palpation, on auscultation)
microscopia | microscopy | microscopic examination
microsplenia | microsplenia | small spleen
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monocytopenia</td>
<td>decreased number of monocytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monocytus</td>
<td>particular type of white blood cell that has one nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monodactyly</td>
<td>one finger on the hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monomyoplegia</td>
<td>paralysis of one muscle (palsy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mononeuritis</td>
<td>inflammation of one nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monopathia</td>
<td>uncomplicated disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monophobia</td>
<td>fear of loneliness (solitude)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monoplegia</td>
<td>palsy (paralysis) of one extremity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myalgia</td>
<td>pain in the muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myelaemia</td>
<td>abnormally increased amount of myelocytes in the blood or tissues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myelitis</td>
<td>inflammation of the spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myelocytus</td>
<td>nerve cell of the grey substance of the brain or spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myelogenesis</td>
<td>developing from the bone marrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myelogramma</td>
<td>X-ray recording of the spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myelography</td>
<td>results of spinal cord X-ray examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myeloma</td>
<td>malignant tumour of cells resembling those found in bone marrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myelopathia</td>
<td>disease of the spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myelosis</td>
<td>any disease of the spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myocardiodystrophia</td>
<td>distrophic lesion of myocardium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myocardiopathia</td>
<td>disease of myocardium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myocardium</td>
<td>middle and thickest layer of the heart wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myogenous</td>
<td>developing from muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myogramma</td>
<td>X-ray recording of the electrical activity of muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myologia</td>
<td>study of muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myoma</td>
<td>benign tumour of muscular tissue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
myometritis  inflammation of uterine muscular membrane
myopathy  any disease of the muscle tissue
myopia  light rays focus in front of the retina
myorrhaphia  suturing of the muscle
myositis  inflammation of a voluntary muscle
myotomy  cutting of a muscle

-n-
nephrectomy  removal of the kidney
nephritis  inflammation of the kidney
nephrogenous, nephrogenic  developing from the renal tissue
nephrogramma  results of kidney X-ray examination
nephrolithiasis  disease with the stones formation (calculi) in the kidney
nephrolithus  renal stone
nephrology  study of kidneys
nephroma  tumour of the kidney
nephromegaly  enlargement of the kidney
nephropathy  disease of kidneys
nephropexy  fixation of the kidney
nephropyelitis  inflammation of the kidney and renal pelvis
nephropyelography  X-ray recording of the kidney and renal pelvis
nephropyelostomy  creation of an artificial opening between kidney and renal pelvis
nephrosis  any kidney disease
nephrotomy  cutting of the kidney
neuralgia  pain that extends along one or more nerves
neurectomy  removal of the nerve
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>neuritis</td>
<td>inflammation of the nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neurogenus</td>
<td>developing from nervous system or tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neurologia</td>
<td>medical speciality related to the brain and nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neurōma</td>
<td>tumour from nervous cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neuropathia</td>
<td>nervous disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neuropathologia</td>
<td>the branch of medicine that treats disease of the nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neurorrhaphia</td>
<td>suturing of the nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neurōsis</td>
<td>mental or psychiatric disorder characterized by fears, anxieties and compulsions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neurotomia</td>
<td>cutting of the nerve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>odontalgia</td>
<td>feeling of pain in the tooth (toothache)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>odontogēnus</td>
<td>developing from the tooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>odontōma</td>
<td>tumour of tooth tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>odontorrhagia</td>
<td>bleeding from the tooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oesophagostomia</td>
<td>creation of an artificial opening of the esophagus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oligaemia</td>
<td>deficiency of the blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oligocytaemia</td>
<td>insufficiency of blood cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oligodactylyia</td>
<td>lack of fingers or toes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oligodontia</td>
<td>lack of teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oligokinesia</td>
<td>small quantity of movements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oligomenorrhoea</td>
<td>disturbance of menses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oligotrophia</td>
<td>insufficient nutrition of the tissue or organ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oliguria</td>
<td>deficient urinary secretion or infrequent urination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oncocytopōma</td>
<td>formation of tumour cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oncologia</td>
<td>study of tumours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oncsōsis</td>
<td>formation of one or more</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
oncotomia  oncotomy  cutting (incision) of the tumour
ophthalmologia  ophthalmology  study of eye disorders
ophthalmoplegia  ophthalmoplegia  palsy (paralysis) of the eye
ophthalmorrhagia  ophthalmorrhagia  bleeding from the eye
ophthalmoscopia  ophthalmoscopy  internal examination of the eye
orthodontus  orthodontist  physician who treats abnormalities of teeth
orthopaedia  orthopedics  study of the correction of the musculoskeletal system deformities
osteoarthritis  osteoarthritis  inflammation of bones and joints
osteoarthropathia  osteoarthropathy  disease of bones and joints
osteoarthrotomia  osteoarthrotomy  cutting (incision) of the bone and joint
osteocondritis  osteochondritis  inflammation of bones and cartilages
osteocytoma  osteocytoma  solitary bone cyst
osteocyte  osteocyte  bone cell
osteodystrophia  osteodystrophy  disturbance of bone tissue nourishment
osteoectomia  osteoectomy  removal of the bone
osteogenesis  osteogenesis  formation of bone tissue
osteogenous,  osteogenic  developing from the bone
osteologia  osteology  study of bones
osteoma  osteoma  tumour made up of bone tissue
osteomyelitis  osteomyelitis  inflammation of the bone and bone marrow
osteopathia  osteopathy  disease of bones
osteopathologia  osteopathology  disease of bones pathologic changes
osteotomia  osteotomy  cutting (section) of the bone
ostitis  ostitis  inflammation of bones
otalgia  otalgia  feeling of pain in the ear (earache)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>otitis</td>
<td>inflammation of the ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otogēnus</td>
<td>developing from the ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otoneurologia</td>
<td>the branch of medicine studying ear nerves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otopyorrhoea</td>
<td>purulent discharge from the ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otorrhagia</td>
<td>bleeding from the ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otorrhoea</td>
<td>discharge from the ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otoscopia</td>
<td>internal examination of the ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paediater</td>
<td>physician who treats children disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paediatria</td>
<td>study of children treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panalgia</td>
<td>widespread pain of the organism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panaortītis</td>
<td>widespread, general inflammation of the aorta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panarterītis</td>
<td>widespread, general inflammation of the artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pancardītis</td>
<td>widespread, general inflammation of the heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panhysterejectomia</td>
<td>removal of the uterus and uterine appendages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panophthalmītis</td>
<td>widespread, general inflammation of the eye ball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panotītis</td>
<td>widespread, general inflammation of the ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paracystītis</td>
<td>tissue inflammation near urinary bladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parametrītis</td>
<td>tissue inflammation near uterus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paranephrītis</td>
<td>tissue inflammation near kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paraproctītis</td>
<td>tissue inflammation near anus and rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parodontopathia</td>
<td>disease of parodontium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parodontōsis</td>
<td>any disease of parodontium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pathologia</td>
<td>study of changes in body tissues or organs as a result of disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pericardītis</td>
<td>tissue inflammation surrounding heart</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
perimetrītis  perimetritis  tissue inflammation surrounding uterus
perinephrītis  perinephritis  tissue inflammation surrounding kidney
periodontium  periodontium  tissue surrounding and supporting the tooth
periosteōma  periosteoma  tumour of periosteum
periostītis  periostitis  inflammation of periosteum
periphlebītis  periphlebitis  inflammation of venous internal membrane
phagocytōsis  phagocytosis  the process when a cell ingests or engulfs other cells, microorganisms or foreign particles
phlebectomia  phlebectomy  removal of the vein
phlebītis  phlebitis  inflammation of the vein
phlebogramma  phlebogram  results of vein X-ray examination
phlebographia  phlebography  X-ray recording of the vein
phlebolithus  phlebolith  venous stone
phleborrhaphia  phleborrhaphy  suturing of the vein
phlebotomia  phlebotomy  cutting of the vein
phthisiater  phthisiotherapist  physician who treats tuberculosis
phthisiologia  phthisiology  study of tuberculosis
physiologia  physiology  science of natural vital processes in the human body
physiotherapia  physiotherapy  natural treatment
pneumatōsis  pneumatosis  pathological accumulation of air or gases in any part of the organism
pneumohaemothora  pneumohemothorax  accumulation of gas and fluid in the pleural cavity
pneumonectomia  pneumonectomy (pulmonectomy)  removal of the lung
pneumonia  pneumonia  inflammation of the lung with consolidation and drainage
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pneumopericardium</td>
<td>pneumopericardium</td>
<td>accumulation of air in the pericardiac cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pneumothorax</td>
<td>pneumothorax</td>
<td>accumulation of gas or air in the pleural cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pneumotomia</td>
<td>pneumotomy</td>
<td>cutting (section) of the lung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polyadenitis</td>
<td>polyadenitis</td>
<td>inflammation of many glands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polyarthritis</td>
<td>polyarthritis</td>
<td>inflammation of many joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polycystosis</td>
<td>polycystosis</td>
<td>abnormal condition accompanied with the formation of multiple cysts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polycytaemia</td>
<td>polycytemia</td>
<td>increase in the total cell mass of the blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polydactyli</td>
<td>polydactyli</td>
<td>having more than normal number of fingers or toes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polyneuritis</td>
<td>polyneuritis</td>
<td>inflammation of many nerves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polytrichia</td>
<td>polytrichia</td>
<td>excessive hair growth on different parts of the body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polyuria</td>
<td>polyuria</td>
<td>excessive discharge of the urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polyvitaminosis</td>
<td>polyvitaminosis</td>
<td>increased amount of vitamins in the organism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proctalgia</td>
<td>proctalgia</td>
<td>rectum pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proctectomy</td>
<td>proctectomy</td>
<td>removal of the anus and the rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proctitis</td>
<td>proctitis</td>
<td>inflammation of the anus and the rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proctologia</td>
<td>proctology</td>
<td>study of the anus and the rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proctopexy</td>
<td>proctopexy</td>
<td>fixation of the anus and the rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proctorrhagia</td>
<td>proctorrhagia</td>
<td>bleeding from the anus and the rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proctoscopy</td>
<td>proctoscopy</td>
<td>internal examination of the rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proctostoma</td>
<td>proctostoma</td>
<td>artificial opening of the rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proctostomy</td>
<td>proctostomy</td>
<td>creation of an artificial opening of the rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psychiatrist</td>
<td>psychiatrist</td>
<td>physician who specializes in the treatment of mental disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psychiatry</td>
<td>psychiatry</td>
<td>science about treatment of mental disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psychogenic</td>
<td>psychogenic</td>
<td>psychological in origin, not having a physical basis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
psychologia: psychology, study of the mind
psychopathia: psychopathy, disease of mind
psychósis: psychosis, mental disturbance in which there is a personality disintegration and an escape into unreality
psychotherapia: psychotherapy, treatment by means of mental interference
pyaemia: pyemia, the presence of pus-forming organisms in the blood
pyelítis: pyelitis, inflammation of the renal pelvis
pyelocystítis: pyelocystitis, inflammation of the renal pelvis and urinary bladder
pyelographía: pyelography, X-ray recording of the renal pelvis
pyelonephrítis: pyelonephritis, inflammation of the renal pelvis and kidney
pyelotomía: pyelotomy, cutting of the renal pelvis
pyodermía: pyodermia, purulent infection of the skin
pyogênus: pyogenic, producing pus
pyometra: pyometra, pus in the uterus
pyonephrósis: pyonephrosis, purulent inflammation of the kidney
pyopericardíum: pyopericardium, accumulation of pus in the pericardiac space
pyophthalmíá: pyophthalmia, purulent inflammation of the eye ball
pyophthalmitítis: pyophthalmitis, purulent inflammation of the eye
pyopneumothorax: pyopneumothorax, accumulation of gas and pus in the pleural cavity
pyorrhóea: pyorrhea, discharge of pus
pyothorax: pyothorax, accumulation of pus in the pleural cavity
pyrogênus: pyrogenic, producing (caused by) fever
pyromaníá: pyromania, striving for setting fire
pyrophóbía: pyrophobia, fear of heat
pyrotherapia: pyrotherapy, treatment by heat
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pyuria</td>
<td>pus in the urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-R-</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhinalgia</td>
<td>feeling of pain in the nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhinitis</td>
<td>inflammation of the nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhinolithus</td>
<td>nasal stone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhinopathia</td>
<td>disease of the nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhinorrhagia</td>
<td>nasal bleeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhinorrhoea</td>
<td>discharge from the nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhinoscopia</td>
<td>internal examinations of the nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>-S-</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splenectomia</td>
<td>removal of the spleen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splenitis</td>
<td>inflammation of the spleen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splenōma</td>
<td>tumour of the spleen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splenomegalia</td>
<td>enlargement of the spleen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(megalosplenia)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splenopathia</td>
<td>disease of the spleen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splenopexia</td>
<td>fixation of the spleen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splenorrhagia</td>
<td>splenic bleeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splenotomia</td>
<td>cutting (incision) of the spleen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spondylītis</td>
<td>inflammation of vertebrae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spondyloarthrītis</td>
<td>inflammation of intervertebral joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spondylogramma</td>
<td>results of vertebrae X-ray examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spondylopathia</td>
<td>disease of the backbone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spondylōsis</td>
<td>any disease of vertebrae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spondylotomia</td>
<td>cutting (incision) of the vertebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomatītis</td>
<td>inflammation of the oral cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomatologia</td>
<td>study of the oral cavity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
stomatorrhagia  mouth bleeding
stomatoscopia  internal examination of the oral cavity

-t-
tachyarrhythmia  fast heart rate
tachycardia  abnormally fast heart rate
tachykinesia  abnormally fast movements
tachyphagia  fast swallowing
toxicoaemia  accumulation of harmful substances in the blood
toxicodermia  accumulation of harmful substances in the skin
toxicologia  study of harmful substances and their effect on living organisms
toxicomania  drug abuse
toxicophobia  fear of poisoning
toxicosis  poisoning of the organism
toxigenic  producing toxin
trichalgia  feeling of pain in the hair
trichatrophia  atrophy of hair
trichopathia  disease of hair
trichorrhoea  falling out of hair
trichosis  any disease of hair

-u-
uraemia  retention of urine substances in the blood
urogênus  producing the urine
urolithus  urinary stone
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acetic acid</td>
<td>acīdum acetīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acetylsalicylic acid</td>
<td>acīdum acetylsalicylīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ascorbic acid</td>
<td>acīdum ascorbinīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benzoic acid</td>
<td>acīdum benzoīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boric acid</td>
<td>acīdum borīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folic acid</td>
<td>acīdum folicum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glutaminic acid</td>
<td>acīdum glutaminīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrochloric acid</td>
<td>acīdum hydrochlorīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrosulfuric acid</td>
<td>acīdum hydrosulfurīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lactic acid</td>
<td>acīdum lactīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lipoic acid</td>
<td>acīdum lipoīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nicotinic acid</td>
<td>acīdum nicotinīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nitric acid</td>
<td>acīdum nitrīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nitrous acid</td>
<td>acīdum nitrōsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phosphoric acid</td>
<td>acīdum phosphorīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salicylic acid</td>
<td>acīdum salicylīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfuric acid</td>
<td>acīdum sulfurīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfurous acid</td>
<td>acīdum sulfurōsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spring adonis</td>
<td>adōnis (īdis m, f) vernālis (is, e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adrenalin</td>
<td>adrenalīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aerosol</td>
<td>aērosōlum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ether</td>
<td>aether, ēris m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aethinyloestradiol</td>
<td>aethinyloestradiōlum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ethyl</td>
<td>aethylīcus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aethylmorphine</td>
<td>aethylmorphīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
albus, a, um white
alōë, es f aloe
althaea, ae f althea
amidopyrīnum, i n amidopyrin
aminophyllīnum, i n aminophyllin
ampicillīnum, i n ampicillin
amīlum (i n) Tritīci (um, i n) wheat starch
anaesthesīnum, i n anaesthesin
analginum, i n analgin
antiasthmaticus, a, um antiasthmatic
apomorphīnum, i n apomorphine
aqua, ae f water

-B-
barbitālum-natrīum, i n barbital-sodium
belladonna, ae f belladonna
benzylpenicillīnum-natrīum, i n benzylpenicillin-sodium
bismūthum, i n bismuth

-C-
cacao cocoa
calciūm, i n calcium
calendūla, ae f calendula
camphōra, ae f camphora
capsūla, ae f capsule
cerebrolysīnum, i n cerebrolysin
chamomilla, ae f matricary
chinosōlum, i n chinosol
chloroformīum, i n chloroform
chloxylum, i n chloxy l
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Term</th>
<th>English Term</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>codeīnum, i n</td>
<td>codeine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coffeīnum, i n</td>
<td>caffeine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coffeīnum-natrīi benzōas,</td>
<td>caffeine-sodium benzoate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coffeīni-natrīi benzoātis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>composītus, a, um</td>
<td>complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convallaria, ae f</td>
<td>lily of the valley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corglycōnum, i n</td>
<td>corglycon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cortex, įcis m</td>
<td>cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cortisōnum, i n</td>
<td>cortison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corvalōlum, i n</td>
<td>corvalol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crataegus, i f</td>
<td>hawthorn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decoctum, i n</td>
<td>decoction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depurātus,a, um</td>
<td>clear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destillātus, a, um</td>
<td>distilled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dibazōlum, i n</td>
<td>dibazol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicaīnum, i n</td>
<td>dicain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>digitalis, is f</td>
<td>foxglove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dilūtus, a, um</td>
<td>diluted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dimedrōlum, i n</td>
<td>dimedrol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diprophyllīnum, i n</td>
<td>diprophyllin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diuretīcus, a, um</td>
<td>diuretic, urinative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dragée</td>
<td>dragée</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emplastrum, i n</td>
<td>plaster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emulsum, i n</td>
<td>emulsion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ephedrīnum, i n</td>
<td>ephedrin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eucalyptus, i f</td>
<td>eucalyptus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
eucatōlum, i n  eucatol
euphyllīnum, i n  euphyllin
extractum, i n  extract

-F-
farfāra, ae f  coltsfoot
ferrum, i n  iron
flavus, a, um  yellow
florenālum, i n  florenal
flos, floris m  flower
fluīdus, a, um  liquid
fluōrum, i n  fluorine
folīum, i n  leaf
frangūla, ae f  buckthorn
furacilīnum, i n  furacilin
furazolidōnum, i n  furazolidon

-G-
glucōsum, i n  glucose
glycerinōsus, a, um  glyceric
granūlum, i n  granule
gutta, ae f  drop

-H-
hepavītum, i n  hepavit
herba, ae f  herb
hydrargyrum, i n  mercury
hydrochlorothiazīdum, i n  hydrochlorothiazid
hydrocortisōnum, i n  hydrocortison
hydrogeniūm, i n  hydrogen
ichthyōlum, i n  ichthyol
infūsum, i n  infusion
iodum, i n  iodine
isotonīcus, a, um  isotonic

kalīum, i n  potassium

lamella (ae  f)  ophthalmic film
ophthalmīca (us, a, um)
leonūrus, i m  motherwort
linimentum, i n  liniment
linum, i n  flax

magnesīum, i n  magnesium
magnīum, i n  magnesium
membranūla (ae  f)  ophthalmic film
ophthalmīca (us, a, um)
mentha, ae f  mint
menthōlum, i n  menthol
methylēnum (i n) coerulēum (us, a, um)
  blue methylen
methylīi salicylas, ātis m  methyl salicylate
methyloestradiōlum, i n  methyloestradiol
millefolīum, i n  milfoil
mixtūra, ae f  mixture
morphīnum, i n  morphine
mucilāgo, ĭnis f  mucilage
mycosolōnum, i n  mycosolon

-N-
naphthalānum, i n  naphtalan
natrium, i n  sodium
nitroglycerīnum, i n  nitroglycerin
norsulfazōlum, i n  norsulfazol
novocaīnum, i n  novocain
nystatīnum, i n  nystatin

-O-
obductus, a, um  coated
oleandomycīnum, i n  oleandomycin
oleōsus, a, um  oily, oil
olēum (i n) Ricīni (us, i m)  castor oil
olēum (i n) Helianthi (us, i m)  sunflower-seeds oil
olēum (i n) Persicōrum (um, i n)  peach oil
olēum, i n  oil
ophthalmīcus, a, um  ophthalmic
oxaphenamīdum, i n  oxaphenamid
oxygēnīum, i n  oxygen
oxytetracyclīnum, i n  oxytetracycline

-P-
pasta, ae f  paste
pectorālis, e  pectoral
phenacetīnum, i n  phenacetin
phenobarbitālum, i n  phenobarbital
phenobolīnum, i n  phenobolin
phenoxyethylpenicillīnum, i n  phenoxyethylpenicillin
phenyl salicylate
phthalazol
phthivazid
fluorine
phthoruracil
pill
pepper
common (greated) plantain
lead
polyphepan
prednisolon
powder
pyracetam
pyrazidol
oak
root
rectal
rectificat
rhubarb
rhizome
riboflavin
sacchar
salicylate
saluzid
salvia, ae f  
semen, inis n  
siccus, a, um  
simplex, īcis  
sirūpus, i m  
solubīlis, e  
solutio Ammonīī (um, i n) caustīcī (us, a, um)  
solutīo, ōnis f  
species, ērum (plural) f  
spiritūōsus, a um  
spiritūs, us m  
streptocīdum, i n  
strophanthīnum, i n  
sulfacylum-natrīum, i n  
sulfadimezīnum, i n  
sulfazīnum, i n  
sulfur, ēris n  
suppositorīum, i n  
suspensīo, ōnis f  
synoestrōlum, i n  
synthomycīnum, i n  

- T -

tabuletta, ae f  
talcum, i n  
tannīnum, i n  
testosterōnum, i n  
tetracyclīnum, i n  
sage  
seed  
dry  
simple  
syrup  
soluble  
liquid ammonia (solution of ammonia)  
solution  
species  
spirituous, alcoholic  
alcohol  
streptocid  
strophanthin  
sulfacyl-sodium  
sulfadimezin  
sulfazin  
sulfur  
suppository  
suspension  
synoestrol  
synthomycin  
tablet  
talc  
tannin  
testosteron  
tetracycline
thiamīnum, i n
thiamin

tinctūra, ae f
tincture

- U -

unguentum, i n
ointment

urtīca, ae f
nettle

- V -

vaginālis, e
vaginal

valeriāna, ae f
valerian

validōlum, i n
validol

vaselīnum, i n
vaseline

- X -

xeroformīum, i n
xeroform

- Z -

zincum, i n
zinc
### VI. English-Latin Pharmaceutical Dictionary

**-A-**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acetic acid</td>
<td>acīdum acetīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acetylsalicylic acid</td>
<td>acīdum acetylsalicylīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adrenalin</td>
<td>adrenalīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aerosol</td>
<td>aērosōlum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aethinyloestradiol</td>
<td>aethinyloestradiōlum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aethylmorphine</td>
<td>aethylmorphīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alcohol</td>
<td>spirītus, us m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alcoholic</td>
<td>spirituōsus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aloe</td>
<td>alōē, es f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>althea</td>
<td>althaea, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amidopyrin</td>
<td>amidopyrīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aminophyllin</td>
<td>aminophyllīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ampicillin</td>
<td>ampicillīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anaesthesin</td>
<td>anaesthesīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>analgin</td>
<td>analgīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antiasthmatic</td>
<td>antiasthmatīcus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apomorphine</td>
<td>apomorphīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ascorbic acid</td>
<td>acīdum ascorbinīcum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**-B-**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>barbitital-sodium</td>
<td>barbitālum-natrūm, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belladonna</td>
<td>belladonna, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benzoic acid</td>
<td>acīdum benzoīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benzylpenicillin-sodium</td>
<td>benzylpenicillīnum-natrūm, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bismuth</td>
<td>bismūthum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue methylen</td>
<td>methylēnum (i n) coerulēum (us, a, um)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
boric acid  acīdu m borīcum
buckthorn  frangūla, ae f

-C-
caffeine  coffēīnum, i n
calcium   calcīum, i n
calendula  calendūla, ae f
camphora   camphōra, ae f
capsule    capsūla, ae f
castor oil olēum (i n) Ricīni (us, i m)
cerebrolysin cerebrolysīnum, i n
chinosol   chinosōlum, i n
chloroform chloroformīum, i n
chloxyl    chloxylum, i n
clear      depurātus, a, um
coated     obductus, a, um
cocoa      cacao
codeine    codeīnum, i n
coffeine-sodium benzoate coffēīnum-natrīi benzoās,
                           coffēīni-natrīi benzoātis
coltsfoot  farfāra, ae f
common (greated) plantain plantāgo, īnis f
complex    composītus, a, um
corglycon  corglycōnum, i n
cortex     cortex, īcis m
cortison   cortisōnum, i n
corvalol   corvalōlum, i n

-D-
decoction  decoctum, i n
dibazol dibazōlum, i n
dicain dicaïnum, i n
diluted dilūtus, a, um
dimedrol dimedrōlum, i n
diprophyllin diprophyllīnum, i n
distilled destillātus, a, um
diuretic, urinative diuretīcus, a, um
dragée dragée
drop gutta, ae f
dry siccus, a, um

-E-
emulsion emulsum, i n
ephedrin ephedrīnum, i n
ether aether, ěris m
ethyl aethylīcus, a, um
eucalyptus eucalyptus, i f
eucatol euca tōlum, i n
euphyllin euphyllīnum, i n
extract extractum, i n

-F-
flax linum, i n
florenal florenālum, i n
flower flos, floris m
fluorine fluōrum, i n or phthorum, i n
folic acid acīdum fōlicum
foxglove digitālis, is f
furacilin furacilīnum, i n
furazolidon furazolidōnūm, i n
-G-

glucose

- glutaminic acid

- glycemic acid

- granule

-H-

- hawthorn

- hepavit

- herb

- hydrochloric acid

- hydrochlorothiazid

- hydrocortison

- hydrogen

- hydrosulfuric acid

-I-

- ichthyol

- infusion

- iodine

- iron

- isotonic

-L-

- lactic acid

- lead

- leaf

- lily of the valley

- liniment

- lipoic acid
liquid
liquid ammonia (solution of ammonia)

-m-
magnesium
matricary
mercury
menthol
methyl salicylate
methylotestradiol
milfoil
mint
mixture
morphine
motherwort
mucilage
mycosolon

-N-
naphtalan
nettle
nicotinic acid
nitric acid
nitro-glycerin
nitrous acid
norsulfazol
novocain
nystatin
-O-

oak     quercus, us f
oil     olēum, i n
oily, oil oleōsus, a, um
ointment unguentum, i n
oleandomycin oleandomycīnum, i n
ophthalmic ophthalmīcus, a, um
ophthalmic film lamella (ae f) (membranūla (ae f)) ophthalmīca (us, a, um)
oxaphenamid oxaphenamīdum, i n
oxygen oxygenīum, i n
oxtetracycline oxytetracyclīnum, i n

-P-
paste    pasta, ae f
peach oil olēum (i n) Persicōrum (um, i n)
pectorai pectorālis, e
pepper    piperītus, a, um
phenacetin phenacetīnum, i n
phenobarbital phenobarbitālum, i n
phenobolin phenobolīnum, i n
phenoxy methylpenicillin phenoxy methylpenicillīnum, i n
phenyl salicylate phenylii salicylas, ātis m
phosphoric acid acīdum phosphorīcum
phthalazol phthalazōlum, i n
phthivazid phthivazīdum, i n
phthoruracil phthoruracīlum, i n
pill      pilūla, ae f
plaster 
emplastrum, i n
polyphepan 
polyphepānum, i n
potassium 
kalīum, i n
powder 
pulvis, ĕris m
prednisolon 
prednisolōnum, i n
pyractam 
pyracetānum, i n
pyrazidol 
pyrazidōlum, i n

-R-
rectal 
rectālis, e
rectificat 
rectificātus, a, um
rhizome 
rhizōma, ātis n
rhubarb 
rheum, i n
riboflavin 
riboflavīnum, i n
root 
radix, īcis f

-S-
sacchar 
sacchārum, i n
sage 
salvīa, ae f
salicylate 
salicylas, ātis m
salicylic acid 
acīdum salicylīcum
saluzid 
saluzīdum, i n
seed 
semen, īnis n
simple 
simplex, īcis
sodium 
natrium, i n
soluble 
solubīlis, e
solution 
solutīo, ōnis f
species 
spēcies, ērum (plural) f
spirituous, alcoholic 
spirituōsus, a um
spring adonis 
adōnis (īdis m, f) vernālis (īs, e)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>streptocid</td>
<td>streptocīdum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strophanthin</td>
<td>strophanthīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfacyl-sodium</td>
<td>sulfacylum-natrūn, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfadimezin</td>
<td>sulfadimezīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfazin</td>
<td>sulfazīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfur</td>
<td>sulfur, ūris n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfuric acid</td>
<td>acīdum sulfurīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfurous acid</td>
<td>acīdum sulfurōsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunflower-seeds oil</td>
<td>olēum (i n) Helianthī (us, i m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppository</td>
<td>suppositorīum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspension</td>
<td>suspensīo, ōnis f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>synoestrol</td>
<td>synoestrōlum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>synthomycin</td>
<td>synthomycīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syrup</td>
<td>sirūpus, i m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablet</td>
<td>tabuletta, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talc</td>
<td>talcum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tannin</td>
<td>tannīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>testosteron</td>
<td>testosterōnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tetracycline</td>
<td>tetracyclīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thiamin</td>
<td>thiamīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tincture</td>
<td>tinctūra, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vaginal</td>
<td>vaginālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valerian</td>
<td>valeriāna, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>validol</td>
<td>validōlum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vaseline</td>
<td>vaselīnum, i n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
water                 aqua, ae f
wheat starch          amylum (i n) Tritici (um, i n)
white                 albus, a, um

-x-
xeroform              xeroformium, i n

-Y-
yellow                flavus, a, um

-Z-
zinc                  zincum, i n
VII. Common Abbreviations Used in Prescriptions

This appendix is meant to be a complete list of all abbreviations used in prescriptions in English-speaking countries (its listing here does not mean such abbreviations should be used).

- **aa (ana)** - of each
- **ad** - to, up to
- **a.c. (ante cibium)** - before meals
- **a.d. (aurio dextra)** - right ear
- **ad lib. (ad libitum)** - use as much as one desires; freely
- **admov. (admove)** - apply
- **agit (agita)** - stir/shake
- **alt. h. (alternis horis)** - every other hour
- **a.m. (ante meridian)** - morning, before noon
- **amp** - ampule
- **amt** - amount
- **aq (aqua)** - water
- **a.l., a.s. (aurio laeva, aurio sinister)** - left ear
- **A.T.C.** - around the clock
- **a.u. (auris utrae)** - both ears
- **bis (bis)** - twice
- **b.i.d. (bis in die)** - twice daily
- **B.M.** - bowel movement
- **bol. (bolus)** - a large pill
- **B.S.** - blood sugar
- **B.S.A** - body surface areas
- **cap., caps. (capsula)** - capsule
- **c (cum)** - with (usually written with a bar on top of the "c")
- **c (cibos)** - food
- **cc** - cubic centimetre; also means "with food" (*cum cibos*)
- **cf** - with food
- **C.H.F.** - congestive heart failure
- **comp.** - compound
- **cr., crm** - cream
- **D5W** - dextrose 5% solution (sometimes written as \(D_{5}W\))
- **D5NS** - dextrose 5% in normal saline (0.9%)
- **D.A.W.** - dispense as written
- **dc, D/C, disc** - discontinue
- **dieb. alt.** (*diebus alternis*) - every other day
- **dil.** - dilute
- **disp.** - dispense
- **div.** - divide
- **d.t.d.** (*dentur tales doses*) - give of such doses
- **D.W.** - distilled water
- **elix.** - elixir
- **e.m.p.** (*ex modo prescripto*) - as directed
- **emuls.** (*emulsum*) - emulsion
- **et** - and
- **ex aq** - in water
- **fl., fld.** - fluid
- **ft.** (*fiat*) - make; let it be made
- **g** - gram
- **G.I.** - gastrointestinal
- **gr** - grain
- **gtt(s)** (*gutta(e)*) - drop(s)
- **G.U.** - genitourinary
- **H** - hypodermic
- **h, hr** - hour
- **H.A.** - headache
- H.B.P. - high blood pressure
- h.s. (hora somni) - at bedtime
- HTN - hypertension
- ID - intradermal
- IM - intramuscular (with respect to injections)
- inj. (injectio) - injection
- IP - intraperitoneal
- IV - intravenous
  - IVP - intravenous push
  - IVPB - intravenous piggyback
- L.A.S."" - label as such
- LCD - coal tar solution
- lin (linimentum) - liniment
- liq (liquor) - solution
- lot. - lotion
- M. (misce) - mix
- m, min (minimum) - a minimum
- mcg - microgram
- mEq - milliequivalent
- mg - milligram
- mist. (mistura) - mix
- mitte (mitte) - send
- mL - millilitre
- N&V, N/V - nausea and vomiting
- nebul (nepula) - a spray
- N.K.A. - no known allergies
- N.K.D.A. - no known drug allergies
- N.M.T. - not more than
- noct. (nocte) - at night
- non rep. (non repetatur) - no repeats
• NPO, n.p.o. (non per os) - nothing by mouth
• NS - normal saline (0.9%)
• 1/2NS - half normal saline (0.45%)
• N.T.E. - not to exceed
• o_2 - both eyes, sometimes written as o₂
• o.d. (oculus dexter) - right eye
• o.s. (oculus sinister) - left eye
• o.u. (oculo utro) - both eyes
• oz - ounce
• per - by or through
• p.c. (post cibium) - after meals
• p.m. (post meridian) - evening or afternoon
• prn (pro re nata) - as needed
• p.o. (per os) - by mouth or orally
• p.r. - by rectum
• pulv. (pulvis) - powder
• q (quaque) - every
• q.a.d. (quoque alternis die) - every other day
• q.h. (quaque hora) - every hour
• q.1h (quaque 1 hora) - every 1 hour; (can replace "1" with other numbers)
• q.d. (quaque die) - every day
• q.i.d. (quater in die) - four times a day
• q.o.d. - every other day
• q.s. (quantum sufficiat) - a sufficient quantity
• R- rectal
• rep., rept. (repetatur) - repeats
• RL, R/L - Ringer's lactate
• s (sine) - without (usually written with a bar on top of the "s")
• s.a. (secundum artum) - use your judgement
- SC, subc, subq, subcut - subcutaneous
- sig - write on label
- SL - sublingually, under the tongue
- S.O.B. - shortness of breath
- sol (solutio) - solution
- s.o.s., si op. sit (si opus sit) - if there is a need
- ss (semis) - one half
- stat (statim) - immediately
- supp (suppositorium) - suppository
- susp - supsension
- syr (syrupus) - syrup
- tab (tabella) - tablet
- tal., t (talus) - such
- tbsp - tablespoon
- troche (trophiscus) - lozenge
- tsp - teaspoon
- t.i.d. (ter in die) - three times a day
- t.i.w. - three times a week
- top. - topical
- T.P.N. - total parenteral nutrition
- tr, tinc., tinct. - tincture
- u.d., ut. dict. (ut dictum) - as directed
- ung. (unguentum) - ointment
- U.R.I. - upper respiratory infection
- U.T.I. - urinary tract infection
- vag - vaginally
- V.S. - vital signs
- w - with
- W.B.C. - white blood count
- w/o - without
• X - times
• Y.O. - years old

VIII. Sample of the Examination Card

I. Translate from English into Latin the following anatomical terms:

1. joints of rib’s head; 5. anterior intercostal veins;
2. major and minor horns; 6. nerve nodes of sympathetic
   networks;
3. superficial lymphatic vessels; 7. minor palatine canals;
4. widest muscle of back; 8. external occipital protuberance.

II. Form the Greek / Latin clinical terms according to the meanings:

1. lack of hair 6. removal of gallbladder
2. study of life 7. inflammation of tear sac
3. disease of blood vessels 8. disturbance of vision
4. fear of cancer 9. fixation of the uterus
5. bleeding from the lip 10. one finger on the hand

III. Explain the meaning of the following clinical terms:

1. myopathia 6. lipoma
2. hypokinesia 7. melanuria
3. pyelocystitis 8. myelogramma
4. gastroscopeia 9. microencephalia
5. interosseus 10. nephroma

IV. Translate the prescriptions from English into Latin:

1. Take: Solution of glucose 5% - 500 ml
   Let it be sterilized!
   Give.
Write on a label:

2. Take: Euphyllin 0,2  
   Cocoa oil 2,0  
   Mix to make suppository  
   Give of such doses number 6  
   Write on a label:

V. Find in the drug names component elements carrying information about pharmaceutical characteristics:

1. Erythromycinum  
2. Pyocidum  
3. Thiophosphamidum  
4. Benzonalum  
5. Chloraminum  
6. Sarcolysinum